Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.
# Table of Contents

**unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**  
9

1 Timothy  
9

Introduction to 1 Timothy  
10

1 Timothy 1  
12

1 Timothy 2  
36

1 Timothy 3  
53

1 Timothy 4  
72

1 Timothy 5  
91

1 Timothy 6  
119

**unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**  
144

Abstract Nouns  
145

Active or Passive  
147

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information  
150

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding  
153

Doublet  
156

Ellipsis  
158

Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’  
160

Forms of You  
162

Generic Noun Phrases  
163

Hendiadys  
165

How to Translate Names  
168

Hyperbole  
172

Idiom  
176

Inclusive and Exclusive “We”  
178

Litotes  
180

Merism  
182

Metaphor  
184

Metonymy  
190

Nominal Adjectives  
192

Numbers  
194

Personification  
197

Poetry  
199

Rhetorical Question  
202

Simile  
205

Textual Variants  
208

Translate Unknowns  
210

Translating Son and Father  
213

When Masculine Words Include Women  
215

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words**  
217

accuse, accused, accuser, accusation  
218

Adam  
219

amen, truly  
220

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather  
221
faith
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
fear, afraid, dread
flesh
fool, foolish, folly
found, founder, foundation
generation
Gentile
gift
glory, glorious, glorify
God
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness
gold, golden
good news, gospel
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
gossip, gossips, talk nonsense
grace, gracious
hand
heart
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
honor
hope, hoped
house
household
hypocrite, hypocrisy
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
instruct, instruction, instructors
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
judge, judgment
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
king, kingdom, kingship
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
labor, laborer, work, hard work
last day, latter days
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness
life, live, living, alive
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if
lord, Lord, master, sir
love, beloved
lust, lustful, passions, desires
Macedonia
man of God
manager, steward, stewardship
mediator
mercy, merciful
might, mighty, mighty works
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded
mystery, hidden truth
name
nation
obey, obedient
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor
oversee, overseer
partial, partiality
patient, patience, impatient
Paul, Saul
peace, peaceful, peacemakers
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
Pilate
plea, plead, beg, implore
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess
power, powerful, powerfully
pray, prayer
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
profane, profaned
profit, profitable, unprofitable
promise, promised
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
proud, pride, prideful
pure, purify, purification
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
rebuke
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance
reject, rejected, rejection
reveal, revealed, revelation
reward, prize, deserve,
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...
ruin, ruins, ruined
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules
saint
sanctify, sanctification
Satan, devil, evil one
save, saved, safe, salvation
Savior, savior
self-control, self-controlled
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors
Introduction to 1 Timothy

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of 1 Timothy

1. Greetings (1:1,2)
2. Paul and Timothy
3. Warning about false teachers (1:3-11)
4. Paul thankful for what Christ has done in his ministry (1:12-17)
5. He calls Timothy to fight in this spiritual battle (1:18-20)
6. Prayer for all (2:1-8)
7. Roles and responsibilities in the church (2:9-6:2)
8. Warnings
9. Second warning about false teachers (6:3-5)
10. Money (6:6-10)
11. Description of a man of God (6:11-16)
12. Note to the wealthy people (6:17-19)
13. Closing words to Timothy (6:20,21)

Who wrote the Book of 1 Timothy?

Paul wrote 1 Timothy. Paul was from the city of Tarsus. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

This book is the first letter Paul wrote to Timothy. Timothy was his disciple and close friend. Paul probably wrote it near the end of his life.

What is the Book of 1 Timothy about?

Paul had left Timothy in the city of Ephesus to help the believers there. Paul wrote this letter to instruct Timothy about various matters. The topics he addressed included church worship, qualifications for church leaders, and warnings against false teachers. This letter shows how Paul was training Timothy to be a leader among the churches.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “1 Timothy” or “First Timothy.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “Paul's First Letter to Timothy.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is discipleship?

Discipleship is the process of making people to be disciples of Christ. The goal of discipleship is to encourage other Christians to be more like Christ. This letter gives many instructions about how a leader should train a less mature Christian. (See: disciple)
Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Singular and plural “you”

In this book, the word “I” refers to Paul. Also, the word “you” is almost always singular and refers to Timothy. The exception to this is 6:21. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' and Forms of You)

What did Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?

Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union with Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major textual issues in the text of the Book of 1 Timothy?

For the following verse, modern versions of the Bible differ from older versions. The ULT text has the modern reading and puts the older reading in a footnote. If a translation of the Bible exists in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions. If not, translators are advised to follow the modern reading.

• “godliness is a way to get more money.” Some older versions of the Bible read this way, “godliness is a way to get more money; withdraw from such things.” (6:5)

(See: Textual Variants)
1 Timothy 1

1 Timothy 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Paul formally introduces this letter in verses 1-2. Writers often began letters in this way in the ancient Near East.

Special concepts in this chapter

Spiritual children

In this chapter, Paul calls Timothy a “son” and his “child.” Paul discipled Timothy as a Christian and a church leader. Paul may also have led him to believe in Christ. Therefore, Paul called Timothy his “son in the faith.” (See: disciple, faith and spirit, spiritual and Metaphor)

Genealogies

Genealogies are lists that record a person’s ancestors or descendants. Jews used genealogies to choose the right man to become king. They did this because only a son of a king could normally become king. They also showed from what tribe and family they came. For example, priests came from the tribe of Levi and the family of Aaron. Most important people had records of their genealogies.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Play on words

The phrase “the law is good if one uses it lawfully” is a play on words. The words “law” and “lawfully” sound similar in the original language.
1 Timothy 1:1

General Information:

In this book, unless otherwise noted, the word “our” refers to Paul and Timothy (the one to whom this letter is written), as well as to all believers. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

Paul, an apostle (ULT)

I, Paul, am writing this letter to you, Timothy. You know that...sent me to represent (UST)

“I, Paul, wrote this letter. I am an apostle.” Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. Immediately after introducing the writer, you may want to indicate to whom the letter was written, as in the UST.

according to the commandment of God (ULT)
because God and...commanded me to do that. God (UST)

“by the command of” or “by the authority of”

of God our Savior (ULT)

God and...God is the one who saves us (UST)

“God who saves us”

of the Lord Jesus Christ our hope (ULT)

the Lord Messiah Jesus...we are confidently waiting for Jesus to return (UST)

Here “our confidence” refers to the person in whom we have confidence. Alternate translation: “Christ Jesus, who is the one in whom we have confidence” or “Christ Jesus, whom we trust” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• of Christ Jesus
• Jesus Christ
• of the Lord
• the commandment
• of God
• an apostle
• Savior
• of Christ
• Christ (2)
• hope
• Paul

Translation Words - UST

• the Messiah Jesus...him
• Messiah Jesus...Jesus
• the Lord
commanded me to do that
God and...God
You know that...sent me to represent
is the one who saves
the Messiah
Messiah (2)
confidently waiting for...to return
I, Paul, am writing this letter to you, Timothy
1 Timothy 1:2

a true son in the faith (ULT)
a true son to me because you trusted in the Messiah after I told you about him (UST)

Paul speaks of his close relationship to Timothy as though they were father and son. This shows Paul's sincere love and approval of Timothy. It is also likely that Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so this is why Paul considered him like his own child. Alternate translation: “who is truly like a son to me” (See: Metaphor)

Grace, mercy, and peace (ULT)
will continue to act kindly and mercifully to you, and that they will make your spirit peaceful (UST)

“May grace, mercy, and peace be yours,” or “May you experience kindness, mercy, and peace”

God the Father (ULT)
I desire that God...who is our Father (UST)

“God, who is our Father.” Here “Father” is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Christ Jesus our Lord (ULT)
the Messiah Jesus, who is our Lord (UST)

“Christ Jesus, who is our Lord”

Translation Words - ULT

• Grace
• Christ Jesus
• Lord
• a...son
• God
• true
• mercy
• God the Father
• the faith
• Christ
• to Timothy
• and peace

Translation Words - UST

• will continue to act kindly
• the Messiah Jesus
• Lord
• a...son to me
• I desire that God
• true
• and mercifully to you
• I desire that God...who is our Father
• you trusted in the Messiah after I told you about him
• the Messiah
• You, Timothy, are like
• and that they will make your spirit peaceful
1 Timothy 1:3

General Information:
The word “you” in this letter is singular and refers to Timothy. (See: Forms of You)

Connecting Statement:
Paul encourages Timothy to reject the wrong use of the law and use good teaching from God.

As I urged you to do (ULT)
I urge you now, just as I urged you (UST)

“As I pleaded with you” or “As I asked you very strongly”

remain in Ephesus (ULT)
that you remain in the city of Ephesus. Stay there (UST)

“wait for me there in the city of Ephesus”

to teach a different doctrine (ULT)
teaching people things that are false (UST)

The implied information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “a different doctrine from what we teach” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• you can command
• Macedonia
• Ephesus
• I urged...to do
• to teach a different doctrine
• As

Translation Words - UST

• you might command
• the province of Macedonia
• the city of Ephesus
• I urged
• teaching people things that are false
• I urge you now, just as

ULT
3 As I urged you to do when I was leaving for Macedonia, remain in Ephesus so that you can command certain people not to teach a different doctrine.

UST
3 I urge you now, just as I urged you when I was going to the province of Macedonia, that you remain in the city of Ephesus. Stay there so that you might command certain men there to stop teaching people things that are false.
1 Timothy 1:4

Neither should they pay attention (ULT)
Instruct them to stop focusing on (UST)

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “And I also want you to command them not to pay attention” (See: Ellipsis)

to stories (ULT)
old useless stories (UST)

These may have been stories about their ancestors.

endless genealogies (ULT)
endless lists of ancestors (UST)

With the word “endless” Paul uses exaggeration to emphasize that the genealogies are very long. (See: Hyperbole)

genealogies (ULT)
lists of ancestors (UST)

the written or verbal record of a person's parents and ancestors

which promote arguments (ULT)
which only cause people to argue with each other (UST)

“These make people angrily disagree.” The people debated about stories and genealogies about which no one could know the truth for certain.

rather than helping the plan of God, which is by faith

Possible meanings are 1) “rather than helping us to understand God's plan to save us, which we learn by faith” or 2) “rather than helping us to do God's work, which we do by faith.”

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- faith
- the stewardship

Translation Words - UST

- God's
- that happens when we trust in God
- plan
1 Timothy 1:5

Now (ULT)
The (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul explains the purpose of what he is commanding Timothy.

command (ULT)
we insist on these things (UST)

Here this does not mean the Old Testament or the Ten Commandments but rather the instructions that Paul gives in 1 Timothy 1:3 and 1 Timothy 1:4.

is love (ULT)
is so that people will love others (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “is to love God” or 2) “is to love people.”

from a pure heart (ULT)
desiring only what is good (UST)

Here “pure” means the person does not have hidden motives to do wrong. Here “heart” refers to a person's mind and thoughts. Alternate translation: “from a mind that is honest” (See: Metonymy)

a good conscience (ULT)
that they will know within themselves that God approves of what they do (UST)

“a conscience that chooses right instead wrong”

a sincere faith (ULT)
that they will sincerely believe the true teaching (UST)

“genuine faith” or “a faith without hypocrisy”

Translation Words - ULT

- command
- love
- a...heart
- pure
- a...conscience
- good
- a...faith

Translation Words - UST

- we insist on these things
- people will love others
- desiring only what is good
- desiring only what is good
- that they will know within themselves that God approves of what they do
• that they will know within themselves that God approves of what they do
• believe the true teaching
1 Timothy 1:6

Some people have missed the mark (ULT)
Some people...have rejected these good things (UST)

Paul speaks of faith in Christ as if it were a target at which to aim. Paul means that some people are not fulfilling the purpose of their faith, which is to love as he just explained in 1:5. (See: Metaphor)

away from these things...and have turned (ULT)
Some people...Instead, they prefer (UST)

Here “turned away” is an idiom that means they have stopped doing what God has commanded. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• and have turned
• have missed the mark

Translation Words - UST

• Instead, they prefer
• have rejected these good things

ULT
6 Some people have missed the mark and have turned away from these things to foolish talk.

UST
6 Some people have rejected these good things. Instead, they prefer to teach useless things.
1 Timothy 1:7

teachers of the law (ULT)
teachers of the laws that God gave to Moses (UST)

Here “law” refers to the law of Moses.

but they do not understand (ULT)
but they do not understand (UST)

“even though they do not understand” or “and yet they do not understand”

what they so confidently affirm (ULT)
the things that they insist are true (UST)

“what they so confidently state is true”

Translation Words - ULT

• they...understand
• teachers of the law

Translation Words - UST

• understand
• teachers of the laws that God gave to Moses

ULT
7 They want to be teachers of the law, but they do not understand either what they are saying or what they so confidently affirm.

UST
7 They desire to be teachers of the laws that God gave to Moses, but they do not understand the things that they talk about, nor the things that they insist are true.
1 Timothy 1:8

But we know that the law is good (ULT)
But we know that the laws that God gave to Moses are good (UST)

“we understand that the law is useful“ or “we understand that the law is beneficial”

if one uses it lawfully (ULT)
if people use them in the right way (UST)

“if a person uses it correctly“ or “if a person uses it the way God intended”

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- is good
- lawfully
- we know

Translation Words - UST

- the laws that God gave to Moses
- are good
- in the right way
- we know

ULT
8 But we know that the law is good if one uses it lawfully.

UST
8 But we know that the laws that God gave to Moses are good if people use them in the right way.
1 Timothy 1:9

We know this (ULT)
We know that (UST)

“Because we realize this” or “We also know this”

that law is not made for a righteous man (ULT)
that...God does not establish laws in order to judge good people...God gives laws (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that God did not make the law for the righteous man” (See: Active or Passive)

a righteous man (ULT)
in order to judge good people (UST)

Here “man” includes both male and female. Alternate translation: “a righteous person” or “a good person” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

is...made for (ULT)
God does...establish...God gives (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God made the law” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• a righteous man
• sinners
• for those who are godless
• law
• is...made for
• for ungodly people
• rebellious people
• for lawless
• profane
• We know

Translation Words - UST

• in order to judge good people
• who sin
• for those who do not revere God
• laws...laws
• God does...establish...God gives
• for those who do not honor God
• who refuse to obey anyone
• to judge people who act as though there are no laws
• who pay no attention to him
• We know
1 Timothy 1:10

for sexually immoral people (ULT)
God establishes laws in order to judge people who are sexually immoral (UST)

This refers to anyone who sleeps with someone to whom they are not married.

for homosexuals (ULT)
men who have sexual relations with other men (UST)

men who sleep with other men

for kidnappers (ULT)
those who kidnap people and sell them as slaves (UST)

“those who kidnap people to sell as slaves” or “those who take people to sell as slaves”

for whatever else is contrary to faithful instruction (ULT)
every other action that is contrary to our true teaching (UST)

“for those who do anything else that is against true Christian teaching”

Translation Words - ULT

• instruction
• for kidnappers
• for sexually immoral people

Translation Words - UST

• teaching
• those who kidnap people and sell them as slaves
• God establishes laws in order to judge people who are sexually immoral
1 Timothy 1:11

the glorious gospel of the blessed God (ULT)
the wonderful good news...God, whom we praise (UST)

“the gospel about the glory that belongs to the blessed God” or “the gospel of the glorious and blessed God”

with which I have been entrusted (ULT)
that...gave to me to announce to others (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which God has given me and made me responsible for” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- blessed
- God
- have been entrusted
- glorious
- gospel

Translation Words - UST

- whom we praise
- God
- gave...to announce to others
- wonderful
- good news
1 Timothy 1:12

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells how he acted in the past and encourages Timothy to trust God.

me...he considered...faithful (ULT)
me...he considered that...could be trusted (UST)

“he considered me trustworthy” or “he regarded me as reliable”

and appointed me to service (ULT)
So he appointed me in order that I would serve him (UST)

Paul speaks of the task of serving God as if it were a place that one could be placed in. Alternate translation: “he assigned me to serve him” or “he appointed me as his servant” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- I thank
- Christ Jesus
- Lord
- service
- and appointed me
- faithful
- Christ
- who strengthened

Translation Words - UST

- I am grateful
- Messiah Jesus
- Lord
- in order that I would serve him
- So he appointed me
- could be trusted
- Messiah
- who enabled...to do this work
1 Timothy 1:13

I was a blasphemer (ULT)
I said evil things about him (UST)

“I was a person who spoke evil against Christ.” Paul is referring to his character before he was a Christian.

a persecutor (ULT)
I caused his people to suffer (UST)

“a person who persecuted those who believed in Christ”

a violent man (ULT)
I acted very cruelly toward them (UST)

“a person was cruel towards other people.” This is a person who believes he has the right to hurt others.

because I acted ignorantly in unbelief (ULT)
since I did not know that what I was doing was wrong, because I did not believe in him (UST)

“But because I did not believe in Jesus, and I did not know what I was doing, I received mercy from Jesus”

I received mercy (ULT)
the Messiah acted kindly to me (UST)

“Jesus showed me mercy” or “Jesus had mercy on me”

Translation Words - ULT

- unbelief
- I received mercy
- a blasphemer
- a persecutor
- ignorantly

Translation Words - UST

- because I did not believe in him
- the Messiah acted kindly to me
- I said evil things about him
- I caused his people to suffer
- I did not know
1 Timothy 1:14

But the grace (ULT)
when he kindly did for me what I did not deserve (UST)

“And the grace”

overflowed…the grace of our Lord (ULT)
overcame all of my evil ways…Our Lord…when he kindly did for me what I did not deserve (UST)

Paul speaks of God’s grace as if it were a liquid that could fill a container and spill out of the top when the container is full. Alternate translation: “God showed me much grace” (See: Metaphor)

with faith and love (ULT)
allowing me to believe in…and to love (UST)

This is the result of God showing much grace to Paul. Alternate translation: “which caused me to trust in Jesus and love him”

that is in Christ Jesus (ULT)
the Messiah Jesus…him, because now I belong to him (UST)

This speaks about Jesus as if he were a container that holds a liquid. Here “in Christ Jesus” refers to having a relationship with Jesus. Alternate translation: “that Christ Jesus enables me to give to God because I am united to him” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- Jesus
- of...Lord
- love
- faith
- Christ
- in Christ Jesus

Translation Words - UST

- when he kindly did for me what I did not deserve
- Jesus...him...him
- Lord
- to love
- allowing me to believe in
- the Messiah
- the Messiah Jesus...him...because now I belong to...him
1 Timothy 1:15

This message is reliable (ULT)
this fact, because we know that it is true (UST)

“This statement is true”

worthy of all acceptance (ULT)
Everyone should completely accept (UST)

“we should receive it without any doubt” or “deserves for us to accept it with full confidence”

Translation Words - ULT

• to save
• Christ Jesus
• worthy
• sinners
• world
• is reliable
• Christ

Translation Words - UST

• to save...so that God would not punish them for their sins
• Jesus...the Messiah
• Everyone should completely accept
• sinful people
• world
• because we know that it is true
• the Messiah

ULT
15 This message is reliable and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners, of whom I am the worst.

UST
15 Everyone should completely accept this fact, because we know that it is true: Jesus the Messiah came into the world to save sinful people so that God would not punish them for their sins. As for me, I consider that I have sinned more than all others.
1 Timothy 1:16

I was given mercy (ULT)  
acted mercifully (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God showed me mercy” or “I obtained mercy from God” (See: Active or Passive)

so that in me, the foremost (ULT)  
to me, the one who has sinned worse than all the others, in order that (UST)

“so that through me, the worst sinner“

Translation Words - ULT

• life  
• eternal  
• Jesus Christ  
• trust  
• I was given mercy  
• Christ  
• patience

Translation Words - UST

• would live  
• forever  
• the Messiah Jesus  
• believe  
• acted mercifully  
• the Messiah  
• he is perfectly patient with them

ULT
16 But for this reason I was given mercy, so that in me, the foremost, Jesus Christ might demonstrate all patience as an example for those who would trust in him for eternal life.

UST
16 But this is why the Messiah Jesus acted mercifully to me, the one who has sinned worse than all the others, in order that he might demonstrate to people that he is perfectly patient with them. He wanted what he did for me to be an example to people who would later believe in him and as a result would live forever.
1 Timothy 1:17

Now...Amen (ULT)
So...This is true (UST)

The word “Now” is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul praises God.

to the...king of the ages (ULT)
the...one who is the eternal king (UST)

“the eternal king” or “the chief ruler forever”

Now to the king of the ages, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever (ULT)
So let us honor and praise forever and ever the one who is the eternal king, the one whom no one can see and who can never die. He alone is God (UST)

The abstract nouns “honor” and “glory” can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: “Now may people forever honor and glorify the king of the ages, who is immortal, invisible, and the only God” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• the...God
• be honor
• Amen
• glory
• king
• ages
• forever
• and ever (2)

Translation Words - UST

• He alone is God
• let us honor
• This is true
• praise
• one who is...king
• eternal
• forever
• and ever (2)
1 Timothy 1:18

I am placing this command before you (ULT)
I am instructing you (UST)

Paul speaks of his instructions as if he could physically put them in front of Timothy. Alternate translation: “I am entrusting you with this command” or “This is what I am commanding you” (See: Metaphor)

my child (ULT)
you are like a son to me (UST)

Paul speaks of his close relationship to Timothy as though Paul is the father and Timothy is the child. It is also likely that Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so this is why Paul considered him like his own child. Alternate translation: “who is truly like my child” (See: Metaphor)

in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you (ULT)
In agreement with what people previously prophesied about you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “in agreement with what other believers prophesied about you” (See: Active or Passive)

you might fight…the good fight (ULT)
strongly oppose those who teach wrong things...to oppose the false teachers as strongly as a soldier fights against those who attack his countrymen (UST)

Paul speaks about Timothy working for the Lord as if he were a soldier fighting a battle. Alternate translation: “continue to work hard for the Lord” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• command
• prophecies
• my child
• good
• Timothy

Translation Words - UST

• I am instructing
• people...prophesied
• you are like a son to me
• to oppose the false teachers as strongly as a soldier fights against those who attack his countrymen
• Timothy
1 Timothy 1:19

a good conscience (ULT)
to do only what you know to be right (UST)

“a conscience that chooses right instead wrong.” See how you translated this in 1 Timothy 1:5.

some people...have shipwrecked their faith (ULT)
some people...have destroyed their relationship with God (UST)

Paul speaks of these people's faith as if it were a ship that could be wrecked at sea. He means that they have ruined their faith and no longer believe in Jesus. You should use this or a similar metaphor if it will be understood in the project language. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- a...conscience
- good
- faith
- their faith (2)
- have rejected

Translation Words - UST

- to do only what you know
- to be right
- to trust in the Lord Jesus
- relationship with God (2)
- have stopped doing this
1 Timothy 1:20

Hymenaeus...Alexander (ULT)
Hymenaeus...Alexander (UST)

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

whom I gave over to Satan (ULT)
I put them into the control of Satan (UST)

Paul speaks as if he physically handed these men to Satan. This probably means that Paul rejected them from the community of believers. Since they are no longer a part of the community, Satan can have power over them and harm them. (See: Metaphor)

they may be taught (ULT)
when Satan punishes them they may learn (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that God may teach them” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• they may be taught
• to Satan
• to blaspheme
• I gave over

Translation Words - UST

• when Satan punishes them they may learn
• Satan
• to insult God
• I put...into the control of
1 Timothy 2

1 Timothy 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

**Peace**

Paul encourages Christians to pray for everyone. They should pray for rulers so that Christians can live peacefully, in a godly and dignified way.

**Women in the church**

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in its historical and cultural context. Some scholars believe men and women are perfectly equal in all things. Other scholars believe God created men and women to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church. Translators should be careful not to let how they understand this issue affect how they translate this passage.

**Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

“**Prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings**”

These terms overlap each other in what they mean. It is not necessary to view them as distinct categories.
1 Timothy 2:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages Timothy to pray for all people.

first of all (ULT)
The most important thing that (UST)

“most important” or “before anything else”

I urge...that requests, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made (ULT)
I urge believers to do is...to continually pray to God...
They should ask God for what they need, and also for what other people need, and they should thank God for everything that he does (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I urge all believers to make requests, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgiving to God” (See: Active or Passive)

I urge (ULT)
I urge believers to do is (UST)

“I plead” or “I ask”

Translation Words - ULT

• I urge
• that requests, prayers, intercessions

Translation Words - UST

• I urge believers to do is
• pray to God...They should ask God for what they need, and also for what other people need
1 Timothy 2:2

a peaceful and quiet life (ULT)
live peacefully and quietly (UST)

Here “peaceful” and “quiet” mean the same thing. Paul wants all believers to be able to live calm lives without trouble from the authorities. (See: Doublet)

and...in authority...all godliness...dignity (ULT)
and...who has power over others...as we do all that God and others...consider to be right...proper (UST)

“that honors God and that other people will respect”

Translation Words - ULT

• in authority
• godliness
• kings
• quiet

Translation Words - UST

• who has power over others
• consider to be right
• kings
• peacefully

ULT

2 for kings and all who are in authority, in order that we may live a peaceful and quiet life in all godliness and dignity.

UST

2 They should pray for kings and for everyone who has power over others, so that we can live peacefully and quietly as we do all that God and others consider to be right and proper.
1 Timothy 2:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• savior
• is good

Translation Words - UST

• God
• who saves
• It is good

ULT
3 This is good and acceptable before God our savior.

UST
3 It is good to pray like that, and it pleases God, who saves us.
1 Timothy 2:4

He desires all people to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth (ULT)
He desires to save all people. He wants everyone to fully know and accept his true message (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God desires to save all people and for them to come to the knowledge of the truth” (See: Active or Passive)

to come to the knowledge of the truth (ULT)
He wants everyone to fully know and accept his true message (UST)

Paul speaks of learning the truth about God as if it were a place to which people could be brought. Alternate translation: “to know and accept what is true” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• to be saved
• of the truth
• the knowledge

Translation Words - UST

• to save
• He wants everyone to fully know and accept his true message
1 Timothy 2:5

there is one...and...mediator between God...man (ULT)
there is only one...and...person who can bring people...God together. That person (UST)

A mediator is a person who helps negotiate a peaceful settlement between two parties who disagree with each other. Here Jesus helps sinners enter into a peaceful relationship with God.

Translation Words - ULT
- Christ Jesus
- God
- between God
- Christ
- mediator

Translation Words - UST
- is the Messiah Jesus
- true God
- God
- is the Messiah
- person who can bring...together. That person

ULT
5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and man—the man Christ Jesus.

UST
5 You see, there is only one true God, and there is only one person who can bring people and God together. That person is the Messiah Jesus, who himself is a man.
1 Timothy 2:6

gave himself (ULT) 
gave his life (UST)
“died willingly”

as a ransom (ULT)  
as a sacrifice in order to ransom (UST)

“as a price of freedom” or “as a payment to obtain freedom”

as the testimony at the right time (ULT)  
which clearly showed at the proper time that God desires to save all people (UST)

It can be made explicit that this was the testimony that God wants to save all people. Alternate translation: “as the proof at the right time that God wants to save all people” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

at the right time (ULT)  
at the proper time (UST)

This means that this was the time that God had chosen.

Translation Words - ULT

• testimony
• at the...time

Translation Words - UST

• clearly showed...that God desires to save all people
• time
1 Timothy 2:7

For this purpose (ULT)
It is (UST)

“For this” or “For this reason”

I myself was made a herald and an apostle (ULT)
to declare this message that God has appointed me
and sent me out to represent him...God sent me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Christ made me, Paul, a preacher and an apostle” (See: Active or Passive)

I am a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and truth (ULT)

“I teach the Gentiles the message of faith and truth.” Here, Paul may be using “faith” and truth” to express one idea. Alternate translation: “I teach the Gentiles about the true faith” (See: Hendiadys)

Translation Words - ULT

• the truth
• truth
• of the Gentiles
• was made
• an apostle
• faith
• Christ
• in Christ
• I am a teacher

Translation Words - UST

• the truth
• God’s true message
• those who are not Jews
• that God has appointed
• sent me out to represent him...God sent me
• that they should believe
• As surely as I belong to the Messiah
• As surely as I belong to the Messiah
• to teach
1 Timothy 2:8

Connecting Statement:
Paul finishes his instructions on prayer then gives some special instructions for women.

I want...men in every place to pray, lifting up holy hands (ULT)

Here “holy hands” means the entire person is holy. Alternate translation: “I want men in every place who are holy to lift up their hands and pray” (See: Metonymy)

men in every place (ULT)
men in every place where believers worship (UST)

“the males in all places” or “the males everywhere.” Here the word “men” refers specifically to males.

lifting up holy hands (ULT)

It was a normal posture for people to raise their hands while praying.

Translation Words - ULT

- holy
- anger
- to pray
- hands

Translation Words - UST

- They should live in a way that pleases God
- they should...be angry with anyone
- to pray to God
- hand

ULT
8 Therefore, I want men in every place to pray, lifting up holy hands without anger or arguing.

UST
8 Therefore, I want men in every place where believers worship to pray to God. They should live in a way that pleases God. When they pray, they should not be angry with anyone and they should not quarrel with anyone.
1 Timothy 2:9

with modesty and self-control (ULT)
that is modest and sensible (UST)

Both of these words mean basically the same thing. Paul is emphasizing that women should wear clothes that are appropriate and do not attract improper attention from men. (See: Doublet)

They should not have braided hair (ULT)
not...with elaborate hairstyles (UST)

During Paul's time, many Roman women braided their hair to make themselves attractive. Braiding is only one way a woman can give undue attention to her hair. If braided hair is unknown, it can be stated in a more general way. Alternate translation: “They should not have fancy hairstyles” or “They should not have elaborate hairstyle that attract attention” (See: Metonymy)

pearls (ULT)
pearls (UST)

These are beautiful and valuable white balls that people use as jewelry. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

• self-control
• gold
• Likewise, I want

Translation Words - UST

• sensible
• gold jewelry
• Similarly
1 Timothy 2:10

who profess godliness through good works (ULT)
who claim to worship God...that is, they should be doing good deeds (UST)

“who want to honor God by the good things they do”

Translation Words - ULT

• godliness
• works
• good

Translation Words - UST

• to worship God
• deeds
• good

ULT
10 but what is appropriate for women who profess godliness through good works.

UST
10 Instead, they should beautify themselves by doing the things that women who claim to worship God should do; that is, they should be doing good deeds.
**1 Timothy 2:11**

in silence (ULT)
quietly from the leaders of the congregation (UST)

“in quietness”

in...all submission (ULT)
quietly from the leaders of the congregation...and fully...subject themselves to them (UST)

“and submit to what is taught”

**Translation Words - ULT**

• submission

**Translation Words - UST**

• subject themselves to them
1 Timothy 2:12

I do not permit a woman (ULT)
I do not permit women (UST)

“...But I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man, but to live in quietness.

Translation Words - ULT
• to exercise authority over
• to teach

Translation Words - UST
• to have authority over
• to teach men

ULT
12 But I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man, but to live in quietness.

UST
12 I do not permit women to teach men, nor to have authority over men. Instead, women should listen quietly.
1 Timothy 2:13

Adam...was formed first (ULT)
Adam...God made...first (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Adam is the one God formed first” or “God created Adam first” (See: Active or Passive)

then Eve (ULT)
and afterwards he made Eve (UST)

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “and then God formed Eve” or “then God created Eve” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• Eve
• Adam

Translation Words - UST

• he made Eve
• Adam
1 Timothy 2:14

Adam was not deceived (ULT)

it was not Adam whom the snake deceived (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “And Adam was not the one whom the serpent deceived” (See: Active or Passive)

but the woman was deceived and became a transgressor (ULT)

It was the woman whom he deceived completely, so that she did what God had told her not to do, becoming a sinner (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but it was the woman who disobeyed God when the serpent deceived her” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- and...a transgressor
- Adam
- was...deceived
- was deceived

Translation Words - UST

- she did what God had told her not to...a sinner
- it was...Adam
- whom the snake deceived
- whom he deceived completely
1 Timothy 2:15

she will be saved...through the bearing of children (ULT)
God will save women...by means of bearing children (UST)

Here “she” refers to women in general. Possible meanings are 1) God will keep women physically safe as they give birth to children, or 2) God will save women from their sins through their role as child bearers.

she will be saved (ULT)
God will save women (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will save her” or “God will save women” (See: Active or Passive)

if they continue (ULT)
if they continue (UST)

“if they remain” or “if they continue living.” Here “they” refers to women.

in faith and love and sanctification (ULT)
to trust in God, and to love others, and to live in a way that pleases God (UST)

The abstract nouns here can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “in trusting Jesus and loving others and living a holy life” (See: Abstract Nouns)

with soundness of mind (ULT)
and if they continue to be sensible (UST)

Possible meanings for this idiom are 1) “with good judgment,” 2) “with modesty,” or 3) “with self-control.” (See: Idiom)

soundness of mind (ULT)
and if they continue to be sensible (UST)

If the idiom is retained in translation, the abstract noun “soundness” can be translated with an adjective. Alternate translation: “a sound mind” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- she will be saved
- love
- sanctification
- bearing of children
- faith

Translation Words - UST

- God will save women
• to love others
• to live in a way that pleases God
• bearing children
• to trust in God
1 Timothy 3

1 Timothy 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

1 Timothy 3:16 was probably a song, poem, or creed the early church used to list important doctrines that believers all shared.

Special concepts in this chapter

Overseers and deacons

The church has used different titles for church leaders. Some titles include elder, pastor, and bishop. The word “overseer” reflects the meaning of the original language in verses 1-2. Paul writes about “deacons” in verses 8 and 12 as another kind of church leader.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Character qualities

This chapter lists several qualities that a man must have if he is to be an overseer or deacon in the church. (See: Abstract Nouns)
1 Timothy 3:1

Connecting Statement:
Paul gives some special instructions on how the overseers of the church should act and be.

a good work (ULT)
a noble task (UST)

“an honorable task”

Translation Words - ULT
• a...work
• is trustworthy
• good
• he desires
• an overseer

Translation Words - UST
• a...task
• Everyone should completely accept that...is true
• noble
• he desires to do
• a leader of the believers

ULT
1 This saying is trustworthy: If someone desires to be an overseer, he desires a good work.

UST
1 Everyone should completely accept that this is true: If anyone aspires to be a leader of the believers, he desires to do a noble task.
1 Timothy 3:2

a husband of one wife (ULT)
He must have only one wife (UST)

An overseer must have only one wife. It is unclear if this excludes men who have been previously widowed or divorced, or never married.

must...be...moderate, sensible, orderly, hospitable (ULT)
must...be...He must not do anything excessively. He must think in wise ways. He must behave well. He must welcome strangers (UST)

“He must not do anything to excess, must be reasonable and behave well, and must be friendly to strangers”

Translation Words - ULT

• able to teach
• without reproach
• sensible
• overseer

Translation Words - UST

• He must be able to teach others
• someone whom no one can rightly accuses of doing anything bad
• He must think in wise ways
• a leader of the believers
1 Timothy 3:3

He must not be addicted to wine, not a brawler, but instead, gentle, peaceful

“He must neither drink too much alcohol nor like to fight and argue, but instead he must be gentle and peaceful”

not a lover of money (ULT)
He must not be greedy for money (UST)

“greedy for money”

Translation Words - ULT

• peaceful
• addicted to wine

Translation Words - UST

• and he must not be quarrelsome
• He must...be a drunkard

ULT
3 not addicted to wine, not a brawler, but instead, gentle, peaceful, not a lover of money.

UST
3 He must not be a drunkard and must not be quick to fight. Instead of that, he must be gentle and he must not be quarrelsome. He must not be greedy for money.
1 Timothy 3:4

He must manage (ULT)
He must lead and care for (UST)

“He should lead” or “He should take care of”

with all respect (ULT)
and completely respect him (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the overseer’s children should obey and show respect to their father or 2) the overseer’s children should show respect to everyone or 3) the overseer should show respect to those in his household as he leads them.

all respect (ULT)
completely respect him (UST)

“complete respect” or “respect at all times”

Translation Words - ULT

• his children
• household
• control
• He must manage

Translation Words - UST

• For example, his children
• family
• should obey
• He must lead and care for
1 Timothy 3:5

For if a man does not know how to manage his own household (ULT)
because if anyone does not know how he should lead and care for the people who live in his own house (UST)

“For when a man cannot manage”

how will he care for the church of God (ULT)
he certainly cannot care for the gathering of God's people (UST)

Paul uses a question to teach Timothy. Alternate translation: “he cannot take care of a church of God.” or “he will not be able to lead a church of God.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the church of God (ULT)
the gathering of...God's...people (UST)

Here “church” refers to a local group of God's people. Alternate translation: “a group of God's people” or “the believers over whom he is in charge” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• the church
• of God
• household
• how to manage
• know

Translation Words - UST

• the gathering of...people
• God's
• people who live in...house
• how he should lead and care
• does...know

ULT
5 For if a man does not know how to manage his own household, how will he care for the church of God?

UST
5 because if anyone does not know how he should lead and care for the people who live in his own house, he certainly cannot care for the gathering of God's people!
1 Timothy 3:6

He must not be a new convert (ULT)
Do not appoint a new believer to be a leader of the believers...a new believer (UST)

“He should not be a new believer” or “He must be a mature believer”

and might not fall into condemnation of the devil (ULT)
Then God would judge him for the same reason as he judged the devil (UST)

Paul speaks of the experience of being condemned for having done wrong as if it were a hole that a person could fall into. Alternate translation: “have God condemn him as he condemned the devil” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• devil
• condemnation
• he...swell with pride

Translation Words - UST

• devil
• Then God would judge him for the same reason as he judged
• might become proud

ULT
6 He must not be a new convert, so that he does not swell with pride and might not fall into condemnation of the devil.

UST
6 Do not appoint a new believer to be a leader of the believers, because a new believer might become proud. Then God would judge him for the same reason as he judged the devil.
1 Timothy 3:7

those outside (ULT)
that...non-believers (UST)

“those outside of the church.” Paul speaks of the church as though it were a place, and of unbelievers as though they were physically outside of it. Alternate translation: “those who are not Christians” (See: Metaphor)

he does not fall into disgrace and the trap of the devil (ULT)
people will not say bad things about him, which is a way that the devil will try to capture him like people capture animals in a trap (UST)

Paul speaks of disgrace and the devil causing someone to sin as if they were a hole or a trap into which a person falls. Here “fall into” means to experience. Alternate translation: “nothing causes him shame before the unbelievers and so that the devil does not cause him to sin” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - UST

• speak well of him
• devil
• speak well of him
• people will...say bad things about him
• will try to capture him like people capture animals in a trap
1 Timothy 3:8

**Connecting Statement:**
Paul gives some special instructions on how the deacons of the church and their wives should act and be.

**Deacons, likewise (ULT)**
**In the same way, those who assist the leader (UST)**

“Deacons, like overseers”

**must be dignified, not double-talkers (ULT)**
**should be people who are serious. They should be sincere when they speak (UST)**

Paul speaks about these people as if they were “double-talkers” or could say two things at once. He means the person says one thing but mean something else. Alternate translation: “should act properly and mean what they say” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- Deacons
- must be dignified
- wine
- likewise

**Translation Words - UST**
- those who assist the leader
- should be people who are serious
- They should not drink too much wine
- In the same way
1 Timothy 3:9

keeping the revealed truth of the faith (ULT)
They must believe the message that God has now revealed to us (UST)

“They must continue to believe the true message God revealed to us and that we believe.” This refers to a truth that had existed for some time but that God was showing to them at that moment. Paul speaks of true teaching about God as if it were an object that a person could keep with himself. (See: Metaphor)

the revealed truth (ULT)
the message (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the truth that God revealed” (See: Active or Passive)

faith with a clean conscience (ULT)
that God has now revealed to us...always doing what it tells us to do (UST)

Paul speaks of a person's knowledge that he has done no wrong as if that knowledge or conscience were clean. Alternate translation: “faith, knowing they have tried their hardest to do what is right” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• clean
• a...conscience
• faith
• revealed truth

Translation Words - UST

• always doing what it tells us to do
• always doing what it tells us to do
• that God has now revealed to us
• message
1 Timothy 3:10

they...must be approved first (ULT)
Just as you do for the leaders...you must first examine the way they behave (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Other believers should approve of them first” or “They should prove themselves first” (See: Active or Passive)

must be approved (ULT)
you must...examine the way they behave (UST)

This means other believers should evaluate those who want to be a deacon and determine if they are fit to serve in the church.

Translation Words - ULT

• blameless
• they may serve
• must be approved

Translation Words - UST

• all things well
• you may let them serve as assistants
• you must...examine the way they behave
1 Timothy 3:11

Women in the same way (ULT)
Their wives likewise (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “women” refers to the wives of deacons or 2) “women” refers to female deacons.

should be dignified (ULT)
must be serious (UST)

“act properly” or “be worthy of respect”

not slanderers (ULT)
must not talk badly about people (UST)

“They must not speak evil about other people”

moderate (ULT)
and must not do anything excessively (UST)

“not do anything to excess.” See how you translated this in 1 Timothy 3:2.

Translation Words - ULT

- should be dignified
- and faithful
- slanderers
- in the same way

Translation Words - UST

- must be serious
- They must be trustworthy
- must...talk badly about people
- likewise
1 Timothy 3:12

husbands of one wife (ULT)
faithful to his wife (UST)

A man must have only one wife. It is unclear if this excludes men who have been previously widowed, divorced, or never married. See how you translated this in 1 Timothy 3:2.

manage well their children and household

“properly take care of and lead their children and others who live in their homes”

Translation Words - ULT

• Deacons
• their children
• households
• managing

Translation Words - UST

• An assistant
• his children
• rest of the people in his house
• and he must lead well and care well for

ULT
12 Deacons must be husbands of one wife, managing well their children and their own households.

UST
12 An assistant must be faithful to his wife, and he must lead well and care well for his children and for the rest of the people in his house.
1 Timothy 3:13

For those (ULT) assistants who...these assistants (UST)

“For those deacons” or “For these church leaders”

for themselves...acquire (ULT) People will respect...People will respect (UST)

“receive for themselves” or “gain for themselves”

a...standing...good (ULT) People will respect...People will respect (UST)

The implied meaning may be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “a good reputation among other believers” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

great confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) they will trust in Jesus with even more confidence or 2) they will speak confidently to other people about their faith in Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- who have served
- well
- good
- the faith
- Christ
- is in Christ Jesus
- confidence

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- serve
- well
- People will respect
- what they believe
- the Messiah
- concerning...the Messiah Jesus
- will be able to speak...boldly to them
1 Timothy 3:14

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells Timothy the reason he wrote to him and then describes Christ's godliness.

Translation Words - ULT

- expecting

Translation Words - UST

- I hope
1 Timothy 3:15

**ULT**

but...if I delay (ULT)
in case I am not able to come soon (UST)

“But in case I cannot go there soon” or “But if something prevents me for being there soon”

so that...you may know how people ought to conduct themselves in the household of God (ULT)
I want you to know how believers should behave in the family of God (UST)

Paul speaks of the group of believers as if they were a family. Possible meanings are 1) Paul is referring only to Timothy’s behavior in the church. Alternate translation: “so that you may know how to conduct yourself as a member of God’s family” or 2) Paul is referring to the believers in general. Alternate translation: “so that you all may know how to conduct yourselves as members of God’s family” (See: Metaphor)

the household of God...which is the church of the living God (ULT)
the family of God...which is the group of all those who believe in Jesus and belong to the living God (UST)

This phrase gives us information about “the household of God” rather than making a distinction between a household of God which is the church and one that is not the church. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “household of God. Those who belong to the family of God are the community of believers in the living God” (See: Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding)

which is the church of the living God, the pillar and support of the truth (ULT)
which is the group of all those who believe in Jesus and belong to the living God. They believe and teach the true message (UST)

Paul speaks of the believers bearing witness to the truth about Christ as if they were a pillar and a base supporting a building. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “which is the church of the living God. And, by keeping and teaching God’s truth, these members of the church support the truth just as a pillar and base support a building” (See: Metaphor)

of God...the living (ULT)
of God...the living (UST)

Here this expression may be speaking of God as the one who gives life to all, as in the UST.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- the living
- the church
- of God
- of...God (2)
- truth
- the household
you may know
the pillar

Translation Words - UST

• the living
• the group of all those who believe in Jesus and belong to God
• God (2)
• true message
• the family
• you to know
• They believe and teach
1 Timothy 3:16

undeniably (ULT)
Everyone agrees that (UST)

“No one can deny”

great is the revealed truth of godliness (ULT)
the things that God has done and that he has now revealed to us...these things are awesome and beyond our understanding (UST)

“that the truth that God has revealed is great”

He was revealed...and was taken up in glory (ULT)
the Messiah was God who came to the world...God powerfully took him up to himself in heaven (UST)

This is most likely a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry. (See: Poetry)

He was revealed (ULT)
the Messiah was God who came to the world (UST)

Here “He” is ambiguous. It could refers to “God” or to “Christ.” It may be best to translate this as “He.” If you must be more specific you could translate it as “Christ who is God” or “Christ.”

in the flesh (ULT)
in a human body (UST)

Paul uses “flesh” here to mean a human being. Alternate translation: “as a true human being” (See: Metonymy)

was justified by the Spirit (ULT)
The Holy Spirit proved that he was genuine (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit confirmed that he was who he said he was” (See: Active or Passive)

was seen by angels (ULT)
God’s messengers saw him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the angels saw him” (See: Active or Passive)

was proclaimed among the nations (ULT)
Believers announced him among the nations (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people in many nations told others about him” (See: Active or Passive)
was believed on in the world (ULT)
People in many parts of the world believed in him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people in many parts of the world believed in him” (See: Active or Passive)

and was taken up in glory (ULT)
God powerfully took him up to himself in heaven (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God the Father took him up to heaven in glory” (See: Active or Passive)

in...glory (ULT)
in...powerfully...in heaven (UST)

This means he received power from God the Father and he is worthy of honor.

Translation Words - ULT

• was revealed
• by angels
• the flesh
• undeniably
• the world
• the Spirit
• glory
• was believed on
• of godliness
• was justified
• was proclaimed
• revealed truth
• the nations

Translation Words - UST

• God who came to the world
• God's messengers
• a human body
• Everyone agrees that
• in many parts of the world
• The Holy Spirit
• powerfully...in heaven
• People...believed in him
• the things that God has done and that he has now revealed to us...these things
• proved that he was genuine
• Believers announced him
• the things that God has done and that he has now revealed to us...these things
• the nations
1 Timothy 4

1 Timothy 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

1 Timothy 4:1 is a prophecy. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Later times

This is another way of referring to the last days. (See: last day, latter days)
1 Timothy 4:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells Timothy what the Spirit says will happen and encourages him in what he should teach.

Now (ULT)
Even so (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul starts to tell a new part of the teaching.

in later times (ULT)
in these later times (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to a time after Paul dies or 2) this is at a latter time in Paul's own life.

will leave...the faith (ULT)
will stop believing...the true message about Jesus (UST)

Paul speaks of people ceasing to trust in Christ as if they were physically leaving a place or an object. Alternate translation: “stop trusting in Jesus” (See: Metaphor)

paying attention to (ULT)
Instead, they will listen to (UST)

“and give attention” or “because they are paying attention”

deceitful spirits and the teachings of demons (ULT)
evil spirits who deceive people, and to the false teachings that they receive from these evil spirits (UST)

“spirits who trick people and the things that demons teach”

Translation Words - ULT

• Spirit
• spirits
• of demons
• faith
• times
• the teachings
• deceitful

Translation Words - UST

• God's Spirit
• evil spirits who deceive people
• from these evil spirits
• true message about Jesus
• times
• to the false teachings that they receive
• evil spirits who deceive people
1 Timothy 4:2

in lying hypocrisy...been (ULT)
These people lie and only pretend to teach what is true (UST)

This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “These people will be hypocrites and speak lies”

their own consciences having...seared (ULT)
They do not even feel guilty about it anymore (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is speaking of people who can no longer tell that they are doing wrong as if their minds are ruined like skin that someone has burned with a hot iron or 2) Paul is speaking of these people as if Satan had put a mark on these people with a hot iron to indicate that they belong to him. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• hypocrisy
• consciences

Translation Words - UST

• and only pretend to teach what is true
• They do not even feel guilty about it anymore
1 Timothy 4:3

They will forbid (ULT)
They prevent believers (UST)

“These people will”

They will forbid marriage (ULT)
They prevent believers from marrying (UST)

It is implied that they will forbid believers to marry. Alternate translation: “forbid believers to marry” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and require abstinence from foods (ULT)
They tell them that they must not eat certain kinds of food...that food (UST)

It is implied that they will forbid only certain foods. Alternate translation: “they will require believers to abstain from certain foods” or “they will not allow people to eat certain foods” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• truth
• by those who believe
• sharing
• and require abstinence
• created
• know

Translation Words - UST

• God
• what is true
• Those of us who believe in God
• us to receive from him...are free to enjoy it
• They tell them that they must not eat
• created
• who know
1 Timothy 4:4

everything created by God is good (ULT)
everything that God has made is good (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “everything that God has created is good” (See: Active or Passive)

nothing that we take with thanksgiving is to be rejected (ULT)
Any kind of food...is acceptable to eat if we thank God for it when we eat it (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “We should not refuse anything for which we give thanks to God” or “Everything that we eat with thanksgiving is acceptable” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- by God
- is good
- that we take
- is to be rejected
- created

Translation Words - UST
- God
- is good
- when we eat it
- is acceptable to eat
- has made
1 Timothy 4:5

It is sanctified...by the word of God and prayer (ULT)
then the food we eat is acceptable to him...When we pray to God and believe his word (UST)

Here “word of God” and “prayer” are used together to express one idea. The prayer is in agreement with the truth that God has revealed. Alternate translation: “it is dedicated for God’s use by praying in agreement with his word” (See: Hendiadys)

it is sanctified (ULT)
then the food we eat is acceptable to him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “we sanctify it” or “we have set it apart” (See: Active or Passive)

the word of God (ULT)
God...believe his word (UST)

Here “word” refers to God’s message or what he has revealed. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - UST

• God
• God...believe his word
• then the food we eat is acceptable to him
• When we pray to...
By placing these things before the brothers (ULT)
When you keep teaching these things to your fellow believers (UST)

Paul speaks of his instructions as if they were objects that could be physically presented to the believers. Here, to place before means to instruct or to remind. Alternate translation: “If you help the believers remember these things” (See: Metaphor)

these things (ULT)
these things (UST)

This refers to the teaching that started in 1 Timothy 3:16.

the brothers (ULT)
to your fellow believers (UST)

This refers to all believers whether male or female. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

being nourished by the words of the faith and by the good teaching that you have followed (ULT)
You will become strong spiritually as you teach and obey the true message that we all believe and the good teaching that you have been following (UST)

Paul speaks of God’s word and its teaching as if it could physically feed Timothy and make him strong. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the words of faith and the good teaching that you have followed are causing you to trust more strongly in Christ” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

words of the faith (ULT)
as you teach and obey the true message...that we all believe (UST)

“words that cause people to believe”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• of Christ Jesus
• brothers
• a...servant
• good
• good
• faith
• of Christ
• teaching

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• Jesus the Messiah
• to your fellow believers
• serving
• well
• good
• that we all believe
• the Messiah
• teaching
1 Timothy 4:7

worldly stories loved by old women (ULT)

“profane stories and old wives’ tales.” The word for “stories” is the same as for “myths” in 1 Timothy 1:4, so you should translate it the same here.

loved by old women (ULT)

This is probably an expression that means “silly” or “absurd.” Paul is not purposely insulting women in his reference to “old women.” Instead, he and his audience knew that men die younger than women, so there are more women than men whose minds have become feeble due to old age. (See: Metaphor)

train...yourself in godliness (ULT)
train...yourself to honor God (UST)

“train yourself to honor God” or “train yourself to act in ways that please God”

Translation Words - UST

• reject

Translation Words - ULT

• worldly
• godliness
• reject

ULT

7 But reject the worldly stories loved by old women. Instead, train yourself in godliness.

UST

7 Have nothing to do with the worthless, foolish stories that old women tell. Instead, train yourself to honor God.
1 Timothy 4:8

For bodily training is of little profit, but godliness is profitable for all things, holding promise for this present life and for the one to come.

ULT
8 For bodily training is of little profit, but godliness is profitable for all things, holding promise for this present life and for the one to come.

UST
8 Training your body helps you a little bit, but learning to honor God helps you in every way, both as you live now on earth and as you live in the future with God.

Translation Words - ULT
- life
- For bodily
- but godliness
- promise
- profit
- profitable

Translation Words - UST
- both as you live now on earth
- your body
- but learning to honor God
- both as you live now on earth
- helps you a little bit
- helps you in every way
1 Timothy 4:9

worthy of full acceptance (ULT)
It is worth believing...completely (UST)

“worthy of your complete belief” or “worthy of your full trust”

Translation Words - ULT
• worthy of
• is trustworthy

Translation Words - UST
• It is worth
• is something that you can rely on

ULT
9 This saying is trustworthy and worthy of full acceptance.

UST
9 What I have just written is something that you can rely on. It is worth believing completely.
1 Timothy 4:10

For this reason (ULT)
For this reason (UST)

“This is the reason”

we struggle and work very hard (ULT)
we work as hard as we can (UST)

The words “struggle” and “work very hard” mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize the intensity with which they serve God. (See: Doublet and Metaphor)

we have hope in the living God (ULT)
we confidently expect that the living God will do the things that he has promised (UST)

Here “living God” probably means, “God, who makes all things live.”

especially of believers (ULT)
but particularly...of those who believe (UST)

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “but he is especially the Savior of those people who believe” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- living
- the...God
- of believers
- the Savior
- we have hope
- we struggle

Translation Words - UST

- the living
- God
- of those who believe
- the Savior...the Savior
- we confidently expect...will do the things that he has promised
- we work as hard as we can
1 Timothy 4:11

Command and teach these things (ULT)
Command these things and teach these things (UST)

“Command and teach these things” or “Command and teach these things I just mentioned”

Translation Words - ULT

- Command
- teach

Translation Words - UST

- Command
- teach these things

ULT
11 Command and teach these things.

UST
11 Command these things and teach these things.
1 Timothy 4:12

Let no one despise your youth (ULT)
Do not allow anyone to say that you are useless because you are young (UST)

“Do not let anyone consider you less important because you are young”

Translation Words - ULT

- love
- purity
- for those who believe
- faith

Translation Words - UST

- how you love others
- how you keep yourself sexually pure
- other believers
- how you trust God

ULT

12 Let no one despise your youth, but be an example for those who believe; in speech, in conduct, in love, in faith, and in purity.

UST

12 Do not allow anyone to say that you are useless because you are young. Instead, show other believers how to live. Show them this by how you speak, by how you behave, by how you love others, by how you trust God, and by how you keep yourself sexually pure.
1 Timothy 4:13

attend to the reading, to the exhortation, and to the teaching (ULT)
be sure to continue reading God’s word to the believers in public, teaching it to the believers, and urging them to obey it (UST)

The words “reading,” “exhortation,” and “teaching” can be translated with verbal phrases. The implied information can also be supplied in translation Alternate translation: “continue reading the scripture to the people, exhorting the people, and teaching the people” (See: Abstract Nouns and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• exhortation
• teaching

Translation Words - UST

• and urging them to obey it
• teaching it to the believers
1 Timothy 4:14

Do not neglect the gift that is in you (ULT)
Be sure to use the gift that is in you (UST)

Paul speaks of Timothy as if he were a container that could hold God's gifts. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Do not neglect your spiritual gift” (See: Metaphor)

Do not neglect (ULT)
Be sure to use (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Be sure to use” (See: Active or Passive)

which was given to you through prophecy (ULT)
what God gave to you...and told what God revealed to them about you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you received when leaders of the church spoke God's word” (See: Active or Passive)

the...the laying on of the hands...elders (ULT)
the gift that is in you...elders laid their hands on you (UST)

This was a ceremony in which the church leaders put their hands on Timothy and prayed that God would enable him to do the work he had commanded him to do.

Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- prophecy
- hands
- elders

Translation Words - UST

- the gift that is in you
- and told what God revealed to them about you
- their hands
- elders
1 Timothy 4:15

Care for these things. Be in them

Paul speaks of God’s gifts to Timothy as if he could physically be in them. Alternate translation: “Do all these things and live according to them” (See: Metaphor)

so that your progress may be evident to all people (ULT)
in order that everyone may see how much you are improving as a follower of Jesus (UST)

Paul speaks of Timothy’s increasing ability to serve God as if it were a physical object that others could look at. Alternate translation: “so other people will know that you are serving God better and better” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• may be evident

Translation Words - UST

• may see
1 Timothy 4:16

Give careful attention to yourself and to the teaching (ULT)
Be very careful about the way that you behave and about the things that you teach (UST)

“Conduct yourself carefully and give attention to the teaching” or “Control your own behavior and give attention to the teaching”

Continue in these things (ULT)
Keep doing these things (UST)

“Continue to do these things”

you will save yourself and those who listen to you

Possible meanings are 1) Timothy will save himself and those who hear him from God's judgment or 2) Timothy will save himself and those who hear him from the influence of false teachers.

Translation Words - ULT

 • you will save
 • teaching

Translation Words - UST

 • to save
 • about the things that you teach
1 Timothy 5

1 Timothy 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Honor and respect

Paul encourages younger Christians to honor and respect older Christians. Cultures honor and respect older people in different ways.

Widows

In the ancient Near East, it was important to care for widows, because they could not provide for themselves.
1 Timothy 5:1

General Information:

Paul was giving these commands to one person, Timothy. Languages that have different forms of “you” or different forms for commands would use the singular form here. (See: Forms of You)

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to tell Timothy how to treat the men, women, widows, and younger women in the church.

Do not rebuke an older man (ULT)
Do not speak harshly to a man older than yourself (UST)

“Do not speak harshly to an older man”

but exhort him (ULT)
Instead, advise him…Advise (UST)

“Instead, encourage him”

as a father...as brothers (ULT)
as if he were your father...as if they were your brothers (UST)

Paul uses these similes to tell Timothy that he should treat fellow believers with sincere love and respect. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• exhort him
• a father
• an older man
• as
• as (2)
• rebuke

Translation Words - UST

• your brothers
• advise him...Advise
• your father
• to a man older than yourself
• as if he were
• as if they were (2)
• Do...speak harshly
1 Timothy 5:2

as mothers...as sisters (ULT)
as you would advise your mother...as you would advise your sisters (UST)

Paul uses these similes to tell Timothy that he should treat fellow believers with sincere love and respect. (See: Simile)

and younger women (ULT)
Advise younger women (UST)

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: “exhort younger women” or “encourage younger women” (See: Ellipsis)

in all purity (ULT)
As you do all of this, you must act in a completely proper way (UST)

“with pure thoughts and actions” or “in a holy way”

Translation Words - ULT

• purity
• older women
• sisters
• as
• as (2)

Translation Words - UST

• As you do all of this, you must act in a completely proper way
• When you need to correct a woman older than yourself, advise her
• your sisters
• as you would advise
• as you would advise (2)
1 Timothy 5:3

Honor widows (ULT)
Make sure that the congregation takes care of widows (UST)

“Respect and provide for widows”

widows, the real (ULT)
widows who truly (UST)

“widows with no one to provide for them”

Translation Words - ULT

• Honor

Translation Words - UST

• Make sure that the congregation takes care of widows who truly have no one to care for them.
1 Timothy 5:4

let them first learn (ULT)
these...should learn that...before doing things for other people (UST)

“first of all they should learn” or “let them make it a priority to learn”

in their own household (ULT)
their own family (UST)

“to their own family” or “to those living in their homes”

to repay their parents (ULT)
they can repay their parents and grandparents for the things that they did for them when they were young (UST)

“Let them do good to their parents in return for the good things their parents have given them”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• to show honor
• children
• household

Translation Words - UST

• God
• they must take care of
• children...children
• their own family
1 Timothy 5:5

But she who is a real widow, and being left all alone (ULT)
A widow who is truly alone and has no one to help her (UST)

“But one who is truly a widow has no family”

She always remains with requests and prayers

“She continues to make requests and prayers”

in requests and prayers (ULT)
So...she prays...earnestly asks God to help her (UST)

These two words mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how much these widows pray. (See: Doublet)

both night and day (ULT)
night and day (UST)

The words “night” and “day” are used together to mean “at all times.” Alternate translation: “all the time” (See: Merism)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• in requests
• prayers
• puts her certain hope
• day

Translation Words - UST

• God will help her
• earnestly asks God to help her
• she prays
• confidently expects
• day
1 Timothy 5:6

is dead (ULT)
is spiritually dead (UST)

Paul speaks about people who do not seek to please God as if they were dead. Alternate translation: “is like a dead person, she does not respond to God” (See: Metaphor)

even though she is still alive (ULT)
even though she is still physically alive (UST)

This refers to physical life.

Translation Words - ULT

• even though she is still alive
• is dead

Translation Words - UST

• even though she is still physically alive
• is spiritually dead
1 Timothy 5:7

Command these things (ULT)
Instruct the believers...in these things (UST)

“Command these things”

so that they may be blameless (ULT)
so that no one can say that they are behaving badly (UST)

“so that no one can find fault with them.” Possible meanings of “they” are 1) “these widows and their families” or 2) “the believers.” It might be best to leave the subject as “they.”

Translation Words - ULT

• Command
• blameless

Translation Words - UST

• Instruct the believers
• no one can say that they are behaving badly
1 Timothy 5:8

someone does not provide for his own relatives, and especially for his own household (ULT)
anyone does not take care of his own relatives, and especially those who live in his own house (UST)

“does not help with his relatives’ needs, especially for those family members living in his home”

he has denied the faith (ULT)
he has rejected what we believe (UST)

“he has acted contrary to the truth we believe”

is worse than an unbeliever (ULT)
we should consider that he is worse than a person who does not believe in the Messiah (UST)

“is worse than those who do not believe in Jesus.” Paul means this person is worse than an unbeliever because even unbelivers take care of their relatives. Therefore, a believer should certainly take care of his relatives.

Translation Words - ULT

• than an unbeliever
• faith
• for his own household

Translation Words - UST

• a person who does not believe in the Messiah
• what we believe
• those who live in his own house
1 Timothy 5:9

Only let a widow be enrolled (ULT)
A widow may join the group of true widows (UST)

There seems to have been a list, written or not, of widows. The church members met these women's needs for shelter, clothing, and food, and these women were expected to devote their lives to serving the Christian community.

who is not younger than sixty (ULT)
only if she...at least sixty years old (UST)

As Paul will explain in 5:11-16, widows who were younger than 60 years old might get married again. Therefore the Christian community was to care only for widows who were older than 60. (See: Numbers)

a wife of one husband (ULT)
is...She also must have had only one husband (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) she was always faithful to her husband or 2) she had not divorced her husband then married another man.

Translation Words - ULT
• than

Translation Words - UST
• years old
1 Timothy 5:10

known for good deeds (ULT)
People must report that she does good works. They should report (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People must be able to attest to her good deeds” (See: Active or Passive)

she has been hospitable to strangers (ULT)
she welcomed strangers (UST)

“has welcomed strangers into her home”

she has washed the feet of the saints (ULT)
she humbly served the believers (UST)

Washing the dirty feet of people who have been walking in the dirt and mud is one way of meeting other people’s needs and making life more enjoyable for them. This probably means she did humble work in general. Alternate translation: “has done common work to help other believers” (See: Metonymy)

of the saints (ULT)
she humbly served the believers (UST)

Some versions translate this word as “the believers” or “God’s holy people.” The essential idea is to refer to Christian believers.

she has relieved the afflicted (ULT)
she helped people who were suffering (UST)

Here “the afflicted” is a nominal adjective that can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “has helped those who are suffering” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

she has been devoted to every good work (ULT)
she was eager to do all kinds of good works (UST)

“has given herself to doing all kinds of good deeds”

Translation Words - ULT

- of the saints
- known for
- deeds
- work
- she has cared for children
- good
- good
- the afflicted

ULT

10 known for good deeds; if she has cared for children, if she has been hospitable to strangers, if she has washed the feet of the saints, if she has relieved the afflicted, and if she has been devoted to every good work.

UST

10 People must report that she does good works. They should report that she brought up her children well, that she welcomed strangers, that she humbly served the believers, that she helped people who were suffering, and that she was eager to do all kinds of good works.
Translation Words - UST

- she humbly served the believers
- People must report that she does...They should report
- works
- of...works
- she brought up her children well
- good
- good
- people who were suffering
1 Timothy 5:11

But refuse to enroll younger widows (ULT)
But do not allow younger widows to join the group of true widows (UST)

“But do not include younger widows in the list.” The list was of widows aged 60 years and older whom the Christian community would help.

for when they feel bodily desires against Christ, they want to marry (ULT)
because when they feel strong desires they will change their minds about being devoted only to the Messiah and they will want to get married again (UST)

“For when they prefer to fulfill their sensual desires and get married, they go against their promise to serve Christ as widows”

Translation Words - ULT

• against Christ
• refuse to enroll

Translation Words - UST

• about being devoted only to the Messiah
• do not allow...to join the group of true widows
1 Timothy 5:12

they revoke their first commitment (ULT)
breaking their prior vow to remain as widows (UST)

“do not keep their prior commitment” or “do not do what they promised before to do”

commitment (ULT)
vow to remain as widows (UST)

The commitment of the widows was their agreement to serve the Christian community for the rest of their lives if the community would supply the widows' needs.

Translation Words - ULT

• guilt
• commitment

Translation Words - UST

• When they do this, then they become guilty
• vow to remain as widows

ULT 12 incurring guilt because they revoke their first commitment.

UST 12 When they do this, then they become guilty of breaking their prior vow to remain as widows.
1 Timothy 5:13

they...learn to be lazy (ULT)
they become accustomed to...doing nothing (UST)

“get into the habit of doing nothing”

also...speak nonsense...are busybodies, saying things
they should not say (ULT)
doing nothing...they...begin to talk about people...to
meddle in other people’s affairs and to say things that
they should not say (UST)

These three phrases are probably three ways of speaking of the
same activity. These people should not be looking into other people’s
private lives and telling about them to others who are no better off
after hearing.

speak nonsense (ULT)
they...begin to talk about people (UST)

words that do not help those who hear them

are busybodies (ULT)
to meddle in other people’s affairs (UST)

people who look into other people’s private lives for their own good and not for the good of the other people

Translation Words - UST

• they...begin to talk about people
• from one house to another house

Translation Words - ULT

• speak nonsense
• from house to house

ULT

13 But at the same time, they also learn to be lazy, going around from house to house. Furthermore, they not only become lazy, but also speak nonsense and are busybodies, saying things they should not say.

UST

13 In addition, they become accustomed to doing nothing. They go from one house to another house, not only doing nothing, but they also begin to talk about people and to meddle in other people’s affairs and to say things that they should not say.
1 Timothy 5:14

ult
I therefore want younger widows to marry, to bear children, to manage their household, and to give the enemy no opportunity for slander.

ust
So, rather than joining the group of true widows, I prefer that younger widows get married, have children, and manage their homes well. In that way they will not give our enemy, Satan, an opportunity to accuse them of doing wrong.

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to Satan or 2) this refers to unbelievers who are hostile to Christians.

Translation Words - ULT
- for slander
- to manage their household
- to bear children

Translation Words - UST
- to accuse them of doing wrong
- and manage their homes well
- have children
1 Timothy 5:15

have...turned aside after Satan (ULT)
have...stopped obeying the Messiah in order to obey Satan (UST)

Paul speaks of living in faithfulness to Christ as if it were a path to be followed. This means the woman stopped obeying Jesus and started obeying Satan. Alternate translation: “left the path of Christ to follow Satan” or “decided to obey Satan instead of Christ” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Satan
• have...turned aside

Translation Words - UST

• Satan
• have...stopped obeying the Messiah
1 Timothy 5:16

any believing woman (ULT)
any believing woman (UST)

“any Christian woman” or “any woman who believes in Christ”

has widows (ULT)
has widows among her relatives (UST)

“has widows among her relatives”

so that the church will not be weighed down (ULT)
In that way, those widows will not have to depend on the group of believers to take care of them. The group of believers (UST)

Paul speaks of the community having to help more people than they are able as if they were carrying too much weight on their backs. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that the church will not have more work to do than they can” or “so that the Christian community will not have to help widows whose families could provide for them” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

real widows (ULT)
true widows who have no family members to care for them (UST)

“those women who have no one to provide for them”

Translation Words - ULT

• church
• believing woman
• will...be weighed down

Translation Words - UST

• group of believers...The group of believers
• believing woman
• those widows will...have to depend on...to take care of them
1 Timothy 5:17

Connecting Statement:

Paul again talks of how elders (overseers) should be treated and then gives Timothy some personal instructions.

\textbf{the elders who rule well...Let...be considered worthy (ULT)}
\textbf{the elders who lead them well...The believers should give (UST)}

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “All believers should think of the elders who are good leaders as worthy” (See: Active or Passive)

\textbf{of double honor (ULT)}
\textbf{both honor and material benefits to (UST)}

Possible meanings are 1) “respect and payment” or 2) “more respect than others receive”

\textbf{those who work with the word and in teaching (ULT)}
\textbf{to the elders who work hard at preaching and teaching (UST)}

Paul speaks about the word as if it is an object that a person can work with. Alternate translation: “those who preach and teach God's word” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Let...be considered worthy
- honor
- in teaching
- who rule
- elders
- those who work

Translation Words - UST

- The believers should give
- honor and material benefits to
- teaching
- who lead them
- elders
- elders who work hard
1 Timothy 5:18

For the scripture says (ULT)
We know that this is right, because long ago Moses wrote in the Scriptures (UST)

This is personification that means that this is what someone has written in the scriptures. Alternate translation: “For we read in the scriptures that” (See: Personification)

You shall not muzzle an ox while it treads out the grain (ULT)
While an ox is threshing grain, you must not tie its mouth so that it cannot eat the grain (UST)

Paul is using this quotation as a metaphor meaning that church leaders deserve to receive payment from the Christian community for their work. (See: Metaphor)

You shall...muzzle (ULT)
you must...tie its mouth so that it cannot eat the grain (UST)

a sleeve that goes over an animal's snout and mouth to prevent it from eating while it is doing work (See: Translate Unknowns)

while it treads out the grain (ULT)
While...is threshing grain (UST)

And ox “treads the grain” when it walks on or pulls a heavy object over the cut grain to separate the grain from the stalks. The ox was allowed to eat some of the grain as they worked.

is worthy (ULT)
those who work for their benefit (UST)

“deserves”

Translation Words - ULT

• is worthy
• scripture
• an ox
• while it treads out the grain
• laborer
• of...wages

Translation Words - UST

• those who work for their benefit
• Scriptures
• an ox
• While...is threshing grain
• those who work for their benefit
• People should pay
1 Timothy 5:19

Do not receive an accusation (ULT)
Do not listen to...anyone who accuses an elder of doing wrong (UST)

Paul speaks of accusations as if they were objects that could be physically accepted by people. Alternate translation: “Do not accept as true any accusation that someone speaks” (See: Metaphor)

two or three (ULT)
two...or three (UST)

“at least two” or “two or more”

Translation Words - ULT

• witnesses
• receive
• an elder
• an accusation

Translation Words - UST

• people testify about the matter
• Do...listen to
• anyone who accuses an elder of doing wrong
• anyone who accuses an elder of doing wrong
1 Timothy 5:20

those who sin (ULT)
those who continue to sin (UST)

This refers to anyone doing anything that disobeys or displeases God, even things that other people do not know about.

before all (ULT)
where everyone can see you (UST)

“where everyone can see”

so that the rest may also be afraid (ULT)
so that the rest of the people will be afraid to sin (UST)

“so that others will be afraid to sin”

Translation Words - ULT

- may...be afraid
- those who sin
- Rebuke

Translation Words - UST

- will be afraid to sin
- those who continue to sin
- Correct
1 Timothy 5:21

the chosen angels (ULT)
God’s chosen heavenly servants (UST)

This means the angels whom God and Jesus have chosen to serve them in a special way.

you should keep these commands without partiality, and do nothing out of favoritism (ULT)
obey the instructions which I have just given to you.
Judge every matter fairly and do not favor one person over another (UST)

The words “partiality" and “favoritism" mean basically the same thing. Paul is emphasizing that Timothy must judge honestly and be fair to everyone. Alternate translation: “to keep these rules without being partial or showing favor to anyone” (See: Doublet)

these commands (ULT)
the instructions which I have just given to you (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the rules Paul just told Timothy or 2) this refers to the rules Paul is about to tell Timothy.

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ Jesus
- angels
- God
- I solemnly command you
- chosen
- Christ
- partiality
- favoritism

Translation Words - UST

- the Messiah Jesus
- heavenly servants
- God
- I solemnly call upon you
- God’s chosen
- the Messiah
- Judge every matter fairly
- and...favor one person over another
1 Timothy 5:22

**hands...Place (ULT)**

The placing of hands was a ceremony in which one or more church leaders would place their hands on people and pray that God would enable those people to serve the church in a way that would please God. Timothy was to wait until the person had shown good character for a long time before officially setting that person apart to serve the Christian community.

**Do not share in the sins of others (ULT)**
**because if he sins, you are partly responsible for that (UST)**

Paul speaks of someone's sin as if it were an object that could be shared with others. Alternate translation: “do not join in another person's sin” or “do not participate when another person sins” (See: Metaphor)

**Do not share in the sins of others (ULT)**
**because if he sins, you are partly responsible for that (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) if Timothy chose someone who was guilty of sin to be a church worker, God would hold Timothy responsible for that person's sin or 2) Timothy should not commit sins he saw others committing.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- in the sins
- pure
- hands

**Translation Words - UST**

- because if he sins, you are partly responsible for that
- without fault
- hand
1 Timothy 5:23

No longer drink only water (ULT)
No longer drink only water, Timothy (UST)

It is implied that Paul means Timothy should not drink only water. He is telling Timothy to use wine as medicine. The water in that area often caused sickness. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• drink only water
• wine

Translation Words - UST

• drink only water, Timothy
• drink

ULT
23 No longer drink only water, but take a little wine for your stomach and your frequent sicknesses.

UST
23 No longer drink only water, Timothy. Instead, drink a little wine, because that may help your frequent stomach sicknesses.
1 Timothy 5:24

The sins of some people are openly known (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The sins of some people are very obvious” (See: Active or Passive)

going before them into judgment (ULT)
and can easily judge them (UST)

“their sins go before those people into judgment.” Paul speaks of sins as if they were moving. Possible meanings are 1) Their sins are so obvious that everyone will know they are guilty even before anyone testifies against them or 2) Their sins are evident, and God judges them now. (See: Personification)

But the sins of others also follow later (ULT)
But other people sin secretly and no one knows about it until later (UST)

“But some sins follow people later.” Paul speaks of sins as if they were moving. Possible meanings are 1) Timothy and the Christian community will not know about certain sins until later or 2) God will not judge some sins until the final judgment. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• judgment

Translation Words - UST

• Remember that when...sin
• and can easily judge them
1 Timothy 5:25

**some good works are openly known**

“some good works are obvious”

**good works**

The works are considered “good” because they fit with God’s character, purposes, and will.

**and those that are otherwise cannot be hidden (ULT)**

**But even when people do good things secretly, everyone will know about them later (UST)**

Paul speaks of sins as if they were objects that someone could hide. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but people will later find out about even the good deeds that are not obvious” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- works
- good
- Likewise

**Translation Words - UST**

- things that people do
- good
- In the same way
1 Timothy 6

1 Timothy 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Slavery

Paul does not write in this chapter about whether slavery is good or bad. Paul teaches about honoring, respecting, and diligently serving masters. Paul teaches all believers to be godly and content in every situation.
1 Timothy 6:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul gives some specific instructions to slaves and masters and then continues with instructions on living in a godly way.

all who are under the yoke as slaves (ULT)
As for believers who are slaves (UST)

Paul speaks of people working as slaves as if they are oxen carrying a yoke. Alternate translation: “Let all who are working as slaves” (See: Metaphor)

all who are (ULT)
As for believers who are (UST)

It is implied that Paul is speaking about believers. Alternate translation: “Let all who are believers” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the name of God and the teaching might not be blasphemed (ULT)
people will not insult God or the things that we teach (UST)

This can be stated in active and positive form. Alternate translation: “the unbelievers might always speak respectfully about the name of God and the teaching” (See: Active or Passive and Litotes)

the name of God (ULT)
God (UST)

Here “name” refers to God's nature or character. Alternate translation: “the character of God” or “God” (See: Metonymy)

the teaching (ULT)
the things that we teach (UST)

“the faith” or “the gospel”

Translation Words - ULT

• as worthy
• masters
• of God
• honor
• name
• might...be blasphemed
• teaching
• the yoke
• as slaves

Translation Words - UST

• they should honor
• masters
God
they should honor
God
people will...insult
the things that we teach
slaves
slaves
1 Timothy 6:2

they are brothers (ULT)
are fellow believers (UST)

Here “brothers” means “fellow believers.”

their masters who are being helped by their work (ULT)
those whom they serve (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “For the masters whom the slaves help with their work” (See: Active or Passive)

and are loved (ULT)
and God loves them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “and the slaves should love them” or 2) “whom God loves” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• masters
• brothers
• declare
• believing
• believers
• are loved
• Teach
• they should serve them

Translation Words - UST

• masters...their masters...their masters
• fellow believers
• urge our people to do them
• who believe in the Messiah
• believers in the Messiah
• God loves them
• Teach
• they should serve
1 Timothy 6:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus Christ
- of...Lord
- godliness
- Christ
- teaches another doctrine
- with teaching

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus the Messiah
- Lord
- to live in a manner that pleases God
- the Messiah
- teach things that are not true
- the teaching

ULT
3 If anyone teaches another doctrine, and does not agree with the sound words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and with teaching that is according to godliness,

UST
3 Some people teach things that are not true. They do not accept the reliable teaching about our Lord Jesus the Messiah and they do not accept the teaching about how to live in a manner that pleases God.
1 Timothy 6:4

he is proud...has an unhealthy interest (ULT)
These people are proud...they abnormally desire to argue about unimportant matters (UST)

Here “he” refers to anyone in general that teaches what is not correct. To make this clear, you can translate “he” as “they” as in the UST. (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

and understands nothing (ULT)
but they do not understand the most important things (UST)

“understands nothing about God’s truth”

has an unhealthy interest in controversies and arguments about words (ULT)
they abnormally desire to argue about unimportant matters and about certain words (UST)

Paul speaks of people who feel compelled to engage in useless arguments as if they were ill. Such people greatly desire to argue, and they do not really want to find a way to agree. Alternate translation: “all he wants to do is argue” or “he craves arguments” (See: Metaphor)

controversies and arguments about words. From these come envy (ULT)
they abnormally desire to argue about unimportant matters...and about certain words. They envy other people (UST)

“controversies and arguments about words, and these controversies and arguments result in envy”

arguments about words (ULT)
about certain words (UST)

“about the meaning of words”

strife (ULT)
They quarrel with others (UST)

arguments, fights

insults (ULT)
say bad things about others (UST)

people falsely saying bad things about each other

evil suspicions (ULT)
and suspect that others have evil motives (UST)

“people feeling like others want to do evil to them”
Translation Words - ULT

- evil
- insults
- strife
- envy
- he is proud
- understands

Translation Words - UST

- evil motives
- say bad things about others
- They quarrel with others
- They envy other people
- These people are proud
- they do...understand
1 Timothy 6:5

with depraved...minds (ULT)
Their whole way of thinking has become completely wrong...Their whole way of thinking has become completely wrong (UST)

“wicked minds”

They do not have...the truth (ULT)
they have rejected the true teaching (UST)

Here the word “They” refers to anyone who teaches anything that does not agree with the teaching of Jesus. The phrase “have lost the truth” represents ignoring it or forgetting it. Alternate translation: “They have ignored the truth” or “They have forgotten the truth”

(See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - UST

• true teaching
• living in a godly way
• Their whole way of thinking has become completely wrong

Translation Words - UST

• truth
• godliness
• minds
• with depraved minds
1 Timothy 6:6

But (ULT)
But we do gain...benefit (UST)

This marks a break in the teaching. Here Paul begins to contrast the kind of riches the wicked people seek through godliness (1 Timothy 6:5) and the true kind of gain people receive through godliness. Alternate translation: “Of course”

is...godliness with contentment...great gain (ULT)
But we do gain...benefit...But we do gain...great...benefit...when we live in a godly way and when we are content with what we have (UST)

The words “godliness” and “contentment” are abstract nouns. Alternate translation: “it is great gain for a person to do what is godly and to be content with what they have” (See: Abstract Nouns)

is...great gain (ULT)
But we do gain...benefit...But we do gain...great...benefit (UST)

“provides great benefits” or “does many good things for us”

Translation Words - ULT
  • godliness

Translation Words - UST
  • when we live in a godly way
1 Timothy 6:7

For we have brought nothing into the world (ULT)

“brought nothing into the world when we were born”

neither are we able to take out anything (ULT)
and we are not able to take anything out of it when we die (UST)

“And we can take nothing out of the world when we die”

Translation Words - ULT

• are we able
• world

Translation Words - UST

• and we are...able
• world when we were born
1 Timothy 6:8

we will be content (ULT)
should be enough to satisfy us (UST)

“we should”

ULT
8 But having food and clothing, we will be content with these.

UST
8 So if we have food and clothing, that should be enough to satisfy us.
1 Timothy 6:9

Now (ULT)
But (UST)

This word marks a break in the teaching. Here Paul returns to the topic about those who think being godly will make them wealthy (1 Timothy 6:5).

to be wealthy fall into temptation, and a trap (ULT) to be rich. As a result, they do wrong things to get money. Then bad things happen to them, from which they cannot escape (UST)

Paul speaks about those who let the temptation of money cause them to sin as if they are animals that have fallen into a hole that a hunter has used as a trap. Alternate translation: “to become wealthy will encounter more temptation than they can resist, and they will be like an animal in a trap (See: Metaphor)

those...fall...many foolish and harmful passions (ULT)
some people...As a result, they do wrong things to get money...They...foolishly...desire...many things that will hurt them (UST)

This continues the trap metaphor. This means that their foolish and harmful passions will overcome them. Alternate translation: “And as an animal falls into a hunter's trap, they will fall into many foolish and harmful passions” (See: Metaphor)

and whatever else plunges people into ruin and destruction (ULT)
and in the end, these things will destroy them (UST)

Paul speaks about those that let sin destroy them as if they are a boat that sinks under the water. Alternate translation: “into other kinds of evil that ruin and destroy people as if they were a boat sinking under the water” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• foolish
• temptation
• passions
• ruin
• a trap

Translation Words - UST

• foolishly
• As a result, they do wrong things to get money
• They...desire
• and in the end, these things will destroy them
• bad things happen to them, from which they cannot escape
1 Timothy 6:10

For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil (ULT)
People do all sorts of evil things when they strongly desire to have a lot of money (UST)

Paul speaks of the cause of evil as if it were a plant root. Alternate translation: “This happens because loving money is a cause of all kinds of evil” (See: Metaphor)

desiring it (ULT)
who longed for money (UST)

“who desire money”

have been led away from the faith (ULT)
have stopped believing the truth that all of us believe (UST)

Paul speaks of wrong desires as if they were evil guides who intentionally guide people down the wrong path. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “have let their desires lead them away from the truth” or “have stopped believing the truth” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

have pierced themselves with many griefs (ULT)
they have caused themselves to be very sorrowful (UST)

Paul speaks about grief as if it were a sword that a person uses to stab themselves. Alternate translation: “have caused themselves to be very sorrowful” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• love of money
• faith
• of evil

Translation Words - UST

• when they strongly desire to have a lot of money
• the truth that all of us believe
• People do all sorts of evil things
1 Timothy 6:11

But you (ULT)
But you (UST)

Here “you” is singular and refers to Timothy. (See: Forms of You)

man of God (ULT)
the man who serves God (UST)

“servant of God” or “person who belongs to God”

flee from these things (ULT)
must not be like the people who love money (UST)

Paul speaks of these temptations and sins as if they were things that a person could physically run away from. Alternate translation: “completely avoid these things” (See: Metaphor)

from these things (ULT)
must not be like the people who love money (UST)

Possible meanings of “these things” are 1) the “love of money” or 2) the different teachings, pride, arguments, and the love of money.

pursue...righteousness (ULT)
decide that you will...do what is right (UST)

“Run after” or “Chase.” Paul speaks of righteousness and other good qualities as if they were things that a person could run after. This metaphor is the opposite of “flee from.” It means to try your best to obtain something. Alternate translation: “Seek to gain” or “Do your best to act in” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• righteousness
• love
• of God
• godliness
• faithfulness
• man...of God
• endurance
• pursue

Translation Words - UST

• do what is right
• and love others
• who serves God
• and that you will live to please God
• Trust God
• the man...who serves God
• Endure difficult circumstances
• decide that you will
1 Timothy 6:12

Fight the good fight of the faith (ULT)  
Try as hard as you can to live according to what you believe (UST)  

Here Paul speaks about a person continuing in faith as if they are an athlete fighting to win a contest or a warrior fighting a battle. Alternate translation: “Try your hardest to obey Christ's teachings with as much energy as an athlete uses in a contest” (See: Metaphor)  

Take hold of the eternal life (ULT)  
Accept every day the gift of eternal life (UST)  

This continues the metaphor. Paul speaks about a person receiving eternal life as if they are a victorious athlete or warrior taking their prize. Alternate translation: “Take eternal life as your reward as a victorious athlete takes his prize” (See: Metaphor)  

to which you were called (ULT)  
that God chose for you to have (UST)  

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to which God has called you” (See: Active or Passive)  

you gave the good confession  
“you confessed what is good” or “you confessed the truth”  

before many witnesses (ULT)  
before many witnesses (UST)  

Paul expresses the idea of location in order to signal the idea of the people to whom Timothy was speaking. Alternate translation: “to many witnesses” (See: Metonymy)  

Translation Words - ULT  

- life  
- eternal  
- you were called  
- witnesses  
- you confessed  
- confession  
- good  
- good  
- faith  

Translation Words - UST  

- life  
- the gift of eternal  
- God chose for you to have  
- witnesses  
- Remember when you proclaimed...that you belong to the Messiah
• Remember when you proclaimed...that you belong to the Messiah
• Try as hard as you can to live according to
• Remember when you proclaimed...that you belong to the Messiah
• what you believe
1 Timothy 6:13

Connecting Statement:

Paul talks of Christ's coming, gives specific instructions to the rich, and lastly closes with a special message to Timothy.

I charge you (ULT)

“This is what I command you”

the one who causes all things to live (ULT) gives life to all things (UST)

“in the presence of God, who causes all things to live.” It is implied that Paul as asking God to be his witness. Alternate translation: “with God, who causes all things to live, as my witness” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and before Christ Jesus, who testified...before Pontius Pilate (ULT)

“in the presence of Christ Jesus, who spoke...Pilate.” It is implied that Paul is asking Jesus to be his witness. Alternate translation: “with Christ Jesus, who spoke...Pilate, as my witness” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the one who causes...to live
- Christ Jesus
- I charge
- God
- who testified
- confession
- good
- Christ
- Pontius Pilate

Translation Words - UST

- gives life
- The Messiah Jesus
- command, commandment
- God
- strongly declared
- what was true when he was on trial
- The Messiah
- Pontius Pilate
1 Timothy 6:14

without spot or blame (ULT)
Do not do anything wrong, so that no one can criticize you (UST)

The word “spot” is a metaphor for moral fault. Possible meanings are 1) Jesus will not find fault with Timothy or blame him for doing wrong or 2) other people will not find fault with Timothy or blame him for doing wrong. (See: Metaphor)

until the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)
Keep obeying the teaching until our Lord Jesus the Messiah comes again (UST)

“until our Lord Jesus Christ comes again”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus Christ
• Lord
• commandment
• Christ
• or blame
• Keep

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus the Messiah
• Lord
• what the Messiah has commanded us
• the Messiah
• so that no one can criticize you
• I command...to obey

ULT
14 Keep the commandment without spot or blame until the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ.

UST
14 As God and the Messiah Jesus see and hear us, I command you to obey what the Messiah has commanded us. Do not do anything wrong, so that no one can criticize you. Keep obeying the teaching until our Lord Jesus the Messiah comes again.
1 Timothy 6:15

God will reveal Christ (ULT) will cause Jesus to come again (UST)

It is implied that God will reveal Jesus. Alternate translation: “God will reveal Jesus” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

God, the blessed and only Sovereign (ULT) God is awesome and is the only Ruler (UST)

“the One worthy of praise who rules over the world”

Translation Words - ULT

- God, the blessed
- Lord
- time
- Sovereign
- of lords
- King
- kings

Translation Words - UST

- God is awesome
- rules over all other people who rule
- at the proper time
- is the...Ruler
- rules over all other people who rule
- He reigns over all other kings
- He reigns over all other kings
1 Timothy 6:16

He alone has immortality (ULT)
He is the only one who will never die (UST)

“Only he has the power to live forever”

and dwells in unapproachable light (ULT)
and he lives in heaven in light that is so bright that no one can approach it (UST)

“dwells in a light so bright that no one can approach him”

Translation Words - ULT

- eternal
- honor
- Amen
- power
- in...light

Translation Words - UST

- forever
- My desire is that all people will honor him
- May it be so
- that he will rule powerfully
- in light that is so bright

ULT

16 He alone has immortality and dwells in unapproachable light. No man has seen him, nor is able to see him. To him be honor and eternal power. Amen.

UST

16 He is the only one who will never die, and he lives in heaven in light that is so bright that no one can approach it! He is the one whom no person has ever seen and whom no person is able to see! My desire is that all people will honor him and that he will rule powerfully forever! May it be so!
To the rich...command them (ULT)
the believers who are rich here...Tell (UST)

Here “rich” is a nominal adjective. It can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “Tell those who are rich” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

in riches, which are uncertain (ULT)
in their many possessions, because they cannot be certain how long they will have them (UST)

“in the many things that they own that they may lose.” The reference here is to physical objects.

richly...all things (ULT)
abundantly...everything we have (UST)

“all the things that will make us truly happy.” The reference here may include physical objects, but it more likely refers to states like love, joy, and peace that people try to obtain by means of physical objects.

Translation Words - ULT
• command them
• God
• to hope
• to be proud
• age

Translation Words - UST
• Tell
• God
• and that they should...trust
• that they should...be proud
• this present world
1 Timothy 6:18

to be rich in good works (ULT)
They should desire to do a lot of good works instead of to acquire a lot of money (UST)

Paul speaks of spiritual blessings as if they were earthly wealth. Alternate translation: “serve and help others in many ways” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• works
• to be rich
• good

Translation Words - UST

• They should desire to do a lot of good works instead of to acquire a lot of money
• They should desire to do a lot of good works instead of to acquire a lot of money
• They should desire to do a lot of good works instead of to acquire a lot of money

ULT
18 Command them to do good, to be rich in good works, to be generous and willing to share,

UST
18 Also, tell them to do good things. They should desire to do a lot of good works instead of to acquire a lot of money. They should be generous with their possessions and be willing to share what they have with others.
1 Timothy 6:19

storing up for themselves a good foundation for what is to come (ULT)
If they do that, it will be as though they were storing up for themselves many good things for their future life in heaven. Having done all of those good deeds will prepare them well for the life (UST)

Here Paul speaks about God's blessings that he gives in heaven as if they are riches that a person is storing away for later use. And, the certainty of these blessings that people will never lose is spoke of as if they were the foundation of a building. Alternate translation: “it will be as though they were storing up for themselves many things that God will give them” (See: Metaphor)

they may take hold of that which is indeed life (ULT)
God will give them. That is the real life (UST)

This recalls the sports metaphor of 1 Timothy 6:12, where the prize is something that the winner can actually hold in his hands. Here the “prize” is “real” life. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• good
• a...foundation

Translation Words - UST

• That is the real life
• many good things...will prepare them well
• many good things...will prepare them well
1 Timothy 6:20

protect what was entrusted to you (ULT)
protect the true message that God has given to you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “faithfully proclaim the true message that Jesus has given to you” (See: Active or Passive)

avoiding the profane, empty discussions (ULT)
Avoid people who want to chatter about things that are not important to God. Avoid (UST)

“Do not pay attention to the foolish talk”

that are falsely called knowledge (ULT)
people who falsely claim that they have true knowledge (UST)

Translation Words - UST

• people who falsely claim
• people who want to chatter about things that are not important to God
• Timothy
• that they have true knowledge

Translation Words - ULT

• that are falsely called
• profane
• Timothy
• knowledge

ULT
20 Timothy, protect what was entrusted to you, avoiding the profane, empty discussions, and opposing ideas that are falsely called knowledge.

UST
20 Timothy, protect the true message that God has given to you. Avoid people who want to chatter about things that are not important to God. Avoid also people who falsely claim that they have true knowledge but who say things that oppose the true things we teach.
1 Timothy 6:21

have missed the faith (ULT)
and have stopped believing...the truth about God (UST)

Paul speaks of faith in Christ as if it were a target at which to aim. Alternate translation: “they have not understood or believed the true faith” (See: Metaphor)

Grace be with you (ULT)
May God be kind to you all (UST)

“May God give grace to all of you.” The “you” is plural and refers to the whole Christian community. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• Grace
• faith
• have missed

Translation Words - UST

• May God be kind
• the truth about God
• and have stopped believing

ULT
21 Some men profess these things and so have missed the faith. Grace be with you.
6:5 [1] Some old copies add, Withdraw from such things, but the best ancient copies do not.

UST
21 Certain men teach these things and have stopped believing the truth about God. May God be kind to you all.
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract Nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

Examples from the Bible

...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...from childhood
you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)
Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness
with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial. But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content. But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.

Today salvation
has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved...
Today God has saved the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness
to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes
of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:17; 2:15; Notes; 4:13; 6:6)
Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

**Translation Strategies**

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker’s message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But
it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all assumed knowledge.

An important piece of implicit information here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged because they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was assumed knowledge that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.”

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you.

or:

At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister who was very thankful.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister, who was very thankful.
  - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause any problem in translation.

- ... The curtain is to separate the holy place from the most holy place. (Exodus 26:33 ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

- A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to the woman who bore him. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.
...for your righteous judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind whom I have created from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve worthless idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT) - By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

...for your righteous judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT) - The phrase “who is ninety years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

Can Sarah bear a son even when she is ninety years old?

I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised

(2 Samuel 22:4 ULT) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, because he is worthy to be praised

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.
You are my Son, whom I love. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. I love you and I am pleased with you. Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:15)
Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

- King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)
  The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”
- ...he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)
  This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.
- You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.
- ...as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)
  This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

- You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  “You have decided to prepare false things to say.”
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

| King David was old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

| “King David was very old.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

| ...a lamb without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

| “...a lamb without any blemish at all...”

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:2; 2:9; 4:10; 5:5; 5:21)
Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor will sinners stand in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, for your comfort,...
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:
But if we are afflicted, we are afflicted for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, we are comforted for your comfort,…

**Absolute Ellipsis**

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, I want you to heal me so that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus...Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...May you receive grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

**Translation Strategies**

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous.

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:4; 2:13; 4:10; 5:2)
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you". The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us", "our", "ours", and "ourselves". Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we", then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, "We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us", they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)
When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

(Next we recommend you learn about:

*When Masculine Words Include Women*

*Go back to: Introduction to 1 Timothy*)
Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The singular form refers to one person, and the plural form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

• Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the formal form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the informal form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

• Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

( Go back to: Introduction to 1 Timothy; 1 Timothy 1:3; 5:1; 6:11; 6:21)
Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet? So is the man who goes into his neighbor’s wife; the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples from the Bible

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
“Yahweh gives favor to the good man, but he condemns the man who makes evil plans.”
(Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse a man who refuses to sell them grain”

(3) Use the word “any, as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse any man who refuses to sell them grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse men who refuse to sell them grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse whoever refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

When Masculine Words Include Women

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:4)
Hendiadys

Description
When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called “hendiadys.” In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

...his own kingdom and glory. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples from the Bible

...for I will give you words and wisdom... (Luke 21:15 ULT)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

...if you are willing and obedient...(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies
If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you wise words

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

(1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own glorious kingdom.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

for I will give you words of wisdom.

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you words of wisdom.

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory.

(1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom of glory.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

if you are willing

and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

if you willingly obedient

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

if you are willing and obedient

(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you obey willingly

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

while we look forward to receiving the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.
while we look forward to receiving what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior.

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:7; 4:5)
How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
• Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
• Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
• Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

_Saul_ was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that _Paul_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

   _You went over the_ Jordan

   and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

   _You went over the_ Jordan River _and came to the_ city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites

   **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because_ Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

   **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because_ King Herod wants to kill you.**

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

   _She named him_ Moses

   and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

   _She named him_ Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’), and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

   ...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named Paul

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:
Next we recommend you learn about:
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

(Go back to: Introduction to 1 Timothy; 1 Timothy 1:20)
Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.

  1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses exaggeration. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

- They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

- Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

- The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

- And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed...
(Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, “Everyone is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus’ closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, “Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies.” (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

**Translation Strategies**

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.” or:

Many of the country of Judea and many of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:4)
Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning.

Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all belong to the same nation.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

“My eyes grow dim from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my eyes out

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:6; 2:15)
Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

**Inclusive**

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

**Exclusive**

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)
In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1; 5:14)
Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are not the least among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

(1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
“Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:1)
Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I am the Alpha and Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything...
From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh’s name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.

He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:5)
Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the Topic. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the Image to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the Idea that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the Point of Comparison.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The Topic, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The Image, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The Idea, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical Image to apply an abstract Idea to the speaker's Topic.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a Topic, with at least one Point of Comparison (Idea) between the Topic and the Image. Often in metaphors, the Topic and the Image are explicitly stated, but the Idea is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the Topic and the Image and to figure out for themselves the Idea that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

**Active Metaphors**

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central **Idea** of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

- Listen to this word, *you cows of Bashan*, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the **Topic**) as if they were cows (the **Image**). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

**NOTE:** Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

- And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; *we are the clay. You are our potter*, and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The **Topic**s are “we” and “you,” and the **Image**s are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The **Idea** being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that *neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.*
Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

**Translation Strategies**

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See **Simile**.
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see **Translate Unknowns** for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

- And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay.
- You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
- And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

- Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.
- (Acts 26:14 ULT)
- Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.

(5) If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay.
- You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
- “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
- “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
- Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

- Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
- Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.

- (Acts 26:14 ULT)
- Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become *fishers of men*. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become *people who gather men.*

Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people.*

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

• as a shorter way of referring to something
• to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

“He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

“The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David.”

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

“who warned you to flee from God’s coming punishment?”

To learn about some common metonyms, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonyms.

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1; 1:5; 2:8; 2:9; 3:5; 3:16; 4:5; 5:10; 6:1; 6:12)
Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

• Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
• Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
• Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous

(Psalms 125:3 ULT)
The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

Blessed are people who are meek...

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:10; 6:17)
Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

- Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

- That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

- When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

- Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

• Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
• Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
• Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
• Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
• Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
• Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The unfoldingWord® Literal Text (ULT) and the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)
Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:9)
Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

| Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT) |

Or sin:

| sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) |

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

| You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT) |

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

| You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT) |

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

| Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT) |

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

| ...sin crouches |
at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...*sin* is at your door, *waiting to attack you*

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...*sin crouches at the door* (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, *just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person*.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...*even the* winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

*He even controls the winds and the sea.*

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.
Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- Parallel lines (See Parallelism and Parallelism with the Same Meaning.)
- Repetition of some or all of a line
  
  
Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- Lines of similar length.
  
  Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude. (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULT)

- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines
  
  “Twinkle, twinkle little star. How I wonder what you are.” (from an English rhyme)

- The same sound repeated many times > “Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions
- Dramatic imagery
- Different use of grammar - including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children’s games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.
• In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULT)

This example of Parallelism with the Same Meaning has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See Parallelism.)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See Personification.)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever. (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases "give thanks" and "his covenant faithfulness endures forever."

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,
or stand in the pathway with sinners,
or sit in the assembly of mockers.
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,
and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1,2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

“Happy is the person not encouraged to sin
Disrespect for God he will not begin
To those who laugh at God, he is no kin.”
God is his constant *delight*
He does what God says *is right*
He thinks of it all day *and night*

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.

(next we recommend you learn about): 

[rloc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-symlanguage]

(Back to: 1 Timothy 3:16)
Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

**Description**

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

**Examples from the Bible**

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

*Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?* Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.
Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, “Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?” If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:5)
Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

• A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
• A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
• Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• People may not know how the two items are similar.
• People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.
Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

   See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves
   (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

   See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword
   (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

   For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

   See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves
   (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

   See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings
   (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

   How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard
   (Matthew 17:20)

   If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

   See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves
   (Matthew 10:16 ULT)
See, I send you out among people who will want to harm you.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about: Metaphor
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:1; 5:2)
Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

10 See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. 11 [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then every man went to his own house.... 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”] [2]

[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.
14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” 16[1] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” 16[1] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.”[1] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.
Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
• Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

• Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
• Keep expressions short if possible.
• Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)
People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves

.(Matthew 7:15 ULT)

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like milk your sins...will be white like the moon

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread
and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

- We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

- I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*

*We have here only five* loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

- We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- to him who made great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

- to him who made *the sun and the moon*

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc/en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

*How to Translate Names*

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:9; 5:18)
Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, “This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father loves the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I love the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory, the very character of his essence. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)
**Human Relationships**

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human “father” and “son.” In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

**Translation Strategies**

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

(See God the Father and Son of God pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating “Father” and “Son.”)

(See back to: 1 Timothy 1:2)
When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes his father rejoice but a foolish child brings grief to his mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

• In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
• In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of men and women.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and have a child for his brother.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)
Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

| The wise man  
| dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)  
| “The wise person dies just like the fool dies.”  
| Wise people die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

| For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers  
| , about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.  
| “For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

| If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.  
| “If people want to follow me, they must deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:9; 4:6)
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3198, H6818, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:19)
Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: death, descendant, Eve, image of God, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:14
- Genesis 03:17
- Genesis 05:01
- Genesis 11:05
- Luke 03:38
- Romans 05:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:09 Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- 01:10 This man's name was Adam. God planted a garden where Adam could live, and put him there to care for it.
- 01:12 Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be Adam's helper.
- 02:11 And God clothed Adam and Eve with animal skins.
- 02:12 So God sent Adam and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- 49:08 When Adam and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, G76

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:13; 2:14)
amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H543, G281

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:17; 6:16)
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:
The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:1)
**angel, archangel**

**Definition:**
An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God's heavenly servant” or “God's spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

**Bible References:**
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- 02:12 God placed large, powerful angels at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- 22:03 The angel responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
• 23:06 Suddenly, a shining angel appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
• 23:07 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God’s glory.
• 25:08 Then angels came and took care of Jesus.
• 38:12 Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an angel to strengthen him.
• 38:15 “I could ask the Father for an army of angels to defend me.”

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:16; 5:21)
apostle, apostleship

Definition:
The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 26:10 Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his apostles. The apostles traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- 30:01 Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- 38:02 Judas was one of Jesus’ apostles. He was in charge of the apostles’ money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- 43:13 The disciples devoted themselves to the apostles’ teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- 46:08 Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1; 2:7)
appoint, appointed

Definition:
The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:9; 1:12; 2:7)
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105, G5351

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:6; 6:21)
authority

Definition:
The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, obey, power, ruler)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:2; 2:12)
bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: burden, Elisha, endure, fruit, iniquity, report, sheep, strength, testimony, testimony)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:14)
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:
The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe
   - To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
   - To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in
   - To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
   - When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
   - The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
   - To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer
   In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.
   - The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
   - The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief
   The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.
   - In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
   - A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:
   - To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
   - To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
   - Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
   - This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
   - Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
   - The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
   - Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
   - The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)
Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:04 Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not believe him.
- 04:08 Abram believed God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed God's promise.
- 11:02 God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who believed in him.
- 11:06 But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands.
- 37:05 Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”
- 43:01 After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The believers there constantly gathered together to pray.
- 43:03 While the believers were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the believers.
- 43:13 Every day, more people became believers.
- 46:06 That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 46:01 Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- 46:09 Some believers who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus! It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- 47:14 They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the believers in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:13; 1:16; 3:16; 4:10; 4:12; 5:8; 5:16; 6:2)
**beloved**

**Definition:**

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:2)
blameless

Definition:
The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:
- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14
- Colossians 01:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:15
- Philippians 03:06

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H5352, H5355, H8535, G273, G274, G298, G299, G338, G410, G423

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:10)
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 074:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:13; 1:20; 6:1; 6:4)
**bless, blessed, blessing**

**Definition:**

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 01:07 God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- 01:15 God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- 01:16 So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 04:04 “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- 04:07 Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- 07:03 Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

*(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:11; 6:15)*
body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

• Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
• When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
• In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
• Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
• Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
• Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

• The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
• When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
• When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
• Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, spirit)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 10:12
• 1 Corinthians 05:05
• Ephesians 04:04
• Judges 14:08
• Numbers 06:6-8
• Psalm 031:09
• Romans 12:05

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:8)
brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:6; 5:1; 6:2)
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:
A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:
- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:16)
call, call out

Definition:
The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God's purpose for you” or “God's special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14
Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:12; 6:20)
**children, child, offspring**

**Definition:**

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God's spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, seed, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34
Word Data:

• Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233,
  H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759,
  H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064,
  G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043,
  G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

( Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:18; 2:15; 3:4; 3:12; 5:4; 5:10)
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:21)
Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God's Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknows)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:07 The Messiah was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- 17:08 As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost 1,000 years.
- 21:01 From the very beginning, God planned to send the Messiah.
- 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own descendants.
- 21:05 The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
- 21:06 God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 43:07 “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
*43:09* "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!"
*43:11* Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
*46:06* Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the Messiah.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, believe, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **46:10** So the church in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The Church has been growing.
**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1577

*(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:5; 3:15; 5:16)*
**clean, wash**

**Definition:**

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29
• Colossians 03:05
• 1 Thessalonians 04:07
• James 04:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:5; 3:9)
column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, false god, image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:04
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:09
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:15)
command, commandment

Definition:
The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1; 1:3; 1:5; 1:18; 4:11; 5:7; 6:13; 6:14; 6:17)
commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, faithful, promise, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:20)
confess, confession

Definition:
To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:16; 6:12; 6:13)
confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: believe, believe, bold, faithful, hope, trust)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:13)
conscience

Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person’s thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a “pure” or “clear” or “clean” conscience.
- If a person has a “clear conscience” it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a “seared” conscience, one that is “branded” as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called “insensitive” and “polluted.”
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, “inner moral guide” or “moral thinking.”

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:19
- 1 Timothy 03:09
- 2 Corinthians 05:11
- 2 Timothy 01:03
- Romans 09:01
- Titus 01:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G4893

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:5; 1:19; 3:9; 4:2)
**corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved**

**Definition:**

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 06:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 014:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:5)
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:
The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

• The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
• In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

• Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
• Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
• A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

• Genesis 15:9-11
• Exodus 24:5-6
• Numbers 19:1-2
• Deuteronomy 21:3-4
• 1 Samuel 01:24-25
• 1 Samuel 15:03
• 1 Samuel 16:2:3
• 1 Kings 01:09
• 2 Chronicles 11:15
• 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
• Matthew 22:4
• Luke 13:15
• Luke 14:05
• Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:18)
create, created, creation, creator

Definition:
The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:3; 4:4)
day

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

• For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
• Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
• Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
• Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

• Acts 20:06
• Daniel 10:04
• Ezra 06:15
• Ezra 06:19
• Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:5)
**deacon**

**Definition:**

A deacon is a person who serves in the local church, helping fellow believers with practical needs, such as food or money.

- The word “deacon” is taken directly from a Greek word meaning “servant” or “minister.”
- From the time of the early Christians, being a deacon has been a well-defined role and ministry in the Church body.
- For example, in the New Testament, deacons would make sure that whatever money or food that the believers shared would be distributed fairly to the widows among them.
- The term “deacon” could also be translated as “church minister” or “church worker” or “church servant,” or some other phrase that shows that the person has been formally appointed to do specific tasks that benefit the local Christian community.

(See also: minister, servant)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 03:10
- 1 Timothy 03:13
- Philippians 01:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: G1249

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:8; 3:12)
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:14; 4:1)
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:
All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.
  • God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these “fallen angels.”
  • Sometimes these demons are called “unclean spirits.” The term “unclean” means “impure” or “evil” or “unholy.”
  • Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
  • Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:
  • The term “demon” could also be translated as “evil spirit.”
  • The term “unclean spirit” could also be translated as “impure spirit” or “corrupt spirit” or “evil spirit.”
  • Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
  • Also consider how the term “demon” is translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: demon-possessed, Satan, false god, false god, angel, evil, clean)

Bible References:
  • James 02:19
  • James 03:15
  • Luke 04:36
  • Mark 03:22
  • Matthew 04:24

Examples from the Bible stories:
  • 26:09 Many people who had demons in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the demons came out of the people, and often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”
  • 32:08 The demons came out of the man and entered the pigs.
  • 47:05 Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the demon that was in her, “In the name of Jesus, come out of her.” Right away the demon left her.
  • 49:02 He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:
  • Strong’s: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:1)
die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:11 God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- 02:11 “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- 07:10 Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- 37:05 “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- 40:08 Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- 43:07 “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- 48:02 Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:6)
disciple

Definition:
The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: apostle, believe, Jesus, John (the Baptist), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 30:08 He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his disciples to give to the people. The disciples kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 38:11 Then Jesus went with his disciples to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- 42:10 Jesus said to his disciples, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102
(Go back to: Introduction to 1 Timothy; 1 Timothy 1 General Notes)
discipline, self-discipline

Definition:
The term "discipline" refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God's will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one's own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "discipline" could be translated as "train and instruct" or "morally guide" or "punish for wrongdoing."
- The noun "discipline" could be translated as "moral training" or "punishment" or "moral correction" or "moral guidance and instruction."

Bible References:

- Ephesians 06:4
- Hebrews 12:05
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4148, G1468

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:20)
**doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge**

**Definition:**

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: teach)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3948, G1319, G1322, G2085

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:3; 4:1; 4:16; 6:3)
**elder, older, old**

**Definition:**

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:14; 5:1; 5:2; 5:17; 5:19)
endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H386, H3201, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:11)
enslave, slave, bondservant, bound

Definition:
To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants. Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: free, righteous, servant)

Bible References:
- Galatians 04:03
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Genesis 15:13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:10)
envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:4)
Ephesus, Ephesian

**Facts:**

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, Paul, Timothy)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 19:01
- Ephesians 01:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:3)
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

• The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
• After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
• The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

• The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
• God said that David's throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

• Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
• The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
• Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
• Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
• “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
• The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
• The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
• David's throne lasting forever could be translated as “David's descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

• Genesis 17:08
• Genesis 48:04
• Exodus 15:17
• 2 Samuel 03:28-30
• 1 Kings 02:32-33
• Job 04:20-21
• Psalms 021:04
• Isaiah 09:6-7
• Isaiah 40:27-28
• Daniel 07:18
• Luke 18:18
• Acts 13:46
• Romans 05:21
• Hebrews 06:19-20
• Hebrews 10:11-14
• 1 John 01:02
• 1 John 05:12
• Revelation 01:4-6
• Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 27:01 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
• 28:01 One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws.”
• 28:10 Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life.”

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:16; 6:12; 6:16)
Eve

Facts:
This was the name of the first woman. Her name means “life” or “living.”

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam’s “helper.” She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, life, Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:03
- Genesis 03:20
- Genesis 04:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:13 Then God took one of Adam’s ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- 02:02 But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”
- 02:11 The man named his wife Eve, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people.
- 21:01 God promised that a descendant of Eve would be born who would crush the snake’s head.
- 48:02 Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive Eve.
- 49:08 When Adam and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2332, G2096

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:13)
evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:
- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 03:01 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
- 04:02 God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:02 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:01 But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
- 29:08 The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:02 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:4; 6:10)
exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 1 Timothy 05:02
- Luke 03:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:1; 4:13; 5:1; 6:2)
faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little faith, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your faith has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:
To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:
- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:
- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05
Examples from the Bible stories:

• 08:05 Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
• 14:12 Even so, God was still faithful to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
• 15:13 The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
• 17:09 David ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
• 18:04 God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
• 35:12 "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you!'"
• 49:17 But God is faithful and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
• 50:04 If you remain faithful to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

• Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:12; 1:15; 3:1; 3:11; 4:3; 4:9)
fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term “dread” refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or, “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or, “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:


(Back to: 1 Timothy 2:10; 5:20)
flesh

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, orgrandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:
- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:
- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:16)
fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:9)
found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:19)
generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, evil, ancestor)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(See back to: 1 Timothy 1:17; 6:17)
**Gentile**

**Facts:**

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:7)
gift

Definition:
The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

• Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
• In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
• The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
• In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

• The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
• In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: spirit, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 12:01
• 2 Samuel 11:08
• Acts 08:20
• Acts 10:04
• Acts 11:17
• Acts 24:17
• James 01:17
• John 04:9-10
• Matthew 05:23
• Matthew 08:4

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:14)
Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 23:07 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- 25:06 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- 37:01 When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God."
- 37:08 Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's glory if you believe in me?"

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:11; 1:17; 3:16)
God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
  NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

• 01:01 God created the universe and everything in it in six days.
• 01:15 God made man and woman in his own image.
• 05:03 “I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you.”
• 09:14 God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
• 10:02 Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
• 16:01 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
• 22:07 You, my son, will be called the prophet of the Most High God who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!”
• 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
• 25:07 “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
• 28:01 “There is only one who is good, and that is God.”
• 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
• 50:16 But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1; 1:2; 1:4; 1:11; 1:17; 2:3; 2:5; 3:5; 3:15; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:10; 5:4; 5:5; 5:21; 6:1; 6:11; 6:13; 6:17)
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 40:07 Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:08 “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of God the Father.”
- 50:10 “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, G3962
(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:2)
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:
The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:
- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladjective)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also evil, honor, obey, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:
- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:09
- Acts 03:12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:18
- Jude 01:16

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:9; 2:2; 3:16; 4:7; 4:8; 6:3; 6:5; 6:6; 6:11)
gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling.
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:9)
good news, gospel

Definition:
The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God's message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, sacrifice, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 23:06 The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- 26:03 Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor.”
- 45:10 Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the good news about Jesus.
- 46:10 Then they sent them off to preach the good news about Jesus in many other places.
- 47:01 One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- 47:13 The good news about Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- 50:01 For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah.
- 50:02 When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- 50:03 Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2097, G2098, G4283
(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:11)
**Definition:**

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

**Bible References:**

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 01:04 God saw that what he had created was good.
- 01:11 God planted the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.
- 01:12 Then God said, “It is not good for man to be alone.”
- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
28:01 "Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me ‘good’? There is only one who is good, and that is God."

Word Data:


gossip, gossips, talk nonsense

Definition:
The term “gossip” refers to talking to people about someone else’s personal affairs, usually in a negative and unproductive way. Often what is talked about has not been confirmed as true.

- The Bible says that spreading negative information about people is wrong. Gossip and slander are examples of this kind of negative speech.
- Gossip is harmful to the person being spoken about because it often hurts someone’s relationships with other people.

(See also: slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:13
- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Leviticus 19:15-16
- Proverbs 16:28
- Romans 01:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5372, G2636, G5397

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:13)
grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God's favor” or “God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:2; 1:12; 1:14; 6:21)
hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

• To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
• To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
• The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
• The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
• Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
• The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
• When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

• These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
• The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
• An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
• To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
• The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
• In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

• Acts 07:25
• Acts 08:17
• Acts 11:21
• Genesis 09:05
• Genesis 14:20
• John 03:35
• Mark 07:32
• Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:5)
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

• The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
• Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
• Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
• When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
• The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

• This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
• Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 10:10
• 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
• Acts 08:17
• Galatians 05:25
• Genesis 01:1-2
• Isaiah 63:10
• Job 33:04
• Matthew 12:31
• Matthew 28:18-19
• Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 01:01 But God's Spirit was there over the water.
• 24:08 When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, the Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
• 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
• 26:03 Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
• 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
• 43:03 They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and they began to speak in other languages.
• 43:08 “And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit just as he promised he would do. The Holy Spirit is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing.”
• 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the Holy Spirit.”
• 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.
**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:1)
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshipping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:16 He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 09:12 “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- 13:01 “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- 13:05 “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- 22:05 “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- 50:02 As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:9; 2:8; 2:15)
honor

Definition:
The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:17; 3:8; 3:11; 5:3; 5:4; 5:17; 6:1; 6:16)
**hope, hoped**

**Definition:**

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1; 3:14; 4:10; 5:5; 6:17)
house

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel's descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh's temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:13)
household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:4; 3:5; 3:12; 3:15; 5:4; 5:8)
hypocrite, hypocrisy

**Definition:**
The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn’t admit his own faults.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

**Bible References:**
- Galatians 02:13
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:09

**Word Data:**
- Strong’s: H120, H2611, H2612, G505, G5272, G5273

*(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:2)*
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”

- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: Christ, Lord, Jesus, believe, faith)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:05
- 2 Corinthians 02:17
- 2 Timothy 01:01
- Galatians 01:22
- Galatians 02:17
- Philemon 01:06
- Revelation 01:10
- Romans 09:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1519, G2962, G5547

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:14; 2:7; 3:13)
instruct, instruction, instructors

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: command, decree, teach)

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:10)
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God’s Son. The name “Jesus” means “Yahweh saves.” The term “Christ” is a title that means “anointed one” and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as “Jesus Christ” or “Christ Jesus.” These names emphasize that God’s Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him “Jesus” because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages “Jesus” and “Christ” are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, “Jesucristo,” “Jezus Christus,” “Yesus Kristus”, and “Hesukristo” are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term “Christ,” some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term “Messiah” throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, “You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah.”
- **23:02** “Name him Jesus (which means, ‘Yahweh saves’), because he will save the people from their sins.”
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though Jesus had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
• 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan’s temptations, so Satan left him.
• 26:08 Then Jesus went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus healed them.
• 31:03 Then Jesus finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
• 38:02 He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
• 40:08 Through his death, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
• 42:11 Then Jesus was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. Jesus sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
• 50:17 Jesus and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: G2424, G5547

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 21:08 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.
- 39:04 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- 50:14 But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.
Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:6; 5:12; 5:24)
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.”
  (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
• 1 Chronicles 18:14
• Isaiah 04:3-4
• Jeremiah 22:03
• Ezekiel 18:16-17
• Micah 03:8
• Matthew 05:43-45
• Matthew 11:19
• Matthew 23:23-24
• Luke 18:03
• Luke 18:08
• Luke 18:13-14
• Luke 21:20-22
• Luke 23:41
• Acts 13:38-39
• Acts 28:04
• Romans 04:1-3
• Galatians 03:6-9
• Galatians 03:11
• Galatians 05:3-4
• Titus 03:6-7
• Hebrews 06:10
• James 02:24
• Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 17:09 David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
• 18:13 Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
• 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
• 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:16)
king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

• In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
• The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
• The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
• Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
• The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 06:15-16
• 2 Kings 05:18
• 2 Samuel 05:03
• Acts 07:9-10
• Acts 13:22
• John 01:49-51
• Luke 01:05
• Luke 22:24-25
• Matthew 05:35
• Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 08:06 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
• 16:01 The Israelites had no king, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
• 16:18 Finally, the people asked God for a king like all the other nations had.
• 17:05 Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became king of Israel. He was a good king, and the people loved him.
• 21:06 God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
• 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe!

Word Data:

• Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:17; 2:2; 6:15)
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:8; 1:9; 1:13; 2:4; 3:5; 3:15; 4:3; 6:4; 6:20)
labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

• In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
• A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
• In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
• Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

• 1 Thessalonians 02:09
• 1 Thessalonians 03:05
• Galatians 04:10-11
• James 05:04
• John 04:38
• Luke 10:02
• Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:10; 5:17; 5:18)
last day, latter days

Definition:
The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: day of the Lord, judge, turn, world)

Bible References:
- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:02
- Isaiah 02:02
- James 05:03
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4 General Notes)
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:
All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God's law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:
- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God's laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God's laws” could include “laws from God” or “God's commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God's instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh's laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:
- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 13:07 God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
- 16:01 After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God's laws.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- 27:01 Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"
28:01 Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good'? There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(329 / 446)
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God's law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God's law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying.”
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God's laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God's laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, law, Moses, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02
unfoldingWord® Translation Words

- Matthew 12:04
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 03:04
- Luke 06:02
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:03
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:8; 1:9)
life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

   - A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
   - Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
   - It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
   - The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
   - In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

   - A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
   - The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

   - Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
   - The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
   - The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
   - The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
   - The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
   - When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God's Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
   - Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

   - 2 Peter 01:03
   - Acts 10:42
   - Genesis 02:07
   - Genesis 07:22
   - Hebrews 10:20
   - Jeremiah 44:02
   - John 01:04
   - Judges 02:18
   - Luke 12:23
   - Matthew 07:14
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed life into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] life he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **35:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life.”
- **44:05** “You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:16; 3:15; 4:8; 4:10; 5:6; 6:12; 6:13; 6:19)
Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:16)
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:3; 2:9; 3:8; 3:11; 5:1; 5:2; 5:25)
**lord, Lord, master, sir**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God's word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the Lord your God.’”
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:03** This is the year of the Lord’s favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, “Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **43:09** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1; 1:2; 1:12; 1:14; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:14; 6:15)
love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
   
   • Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   • When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   • In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
   
   • This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   • The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

• Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
• Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
• Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
• In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
• Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
• Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 13:07
• 1 John 03:02
• 1 Thessalonians 04:10
• Galatians 05:23
• Genesis 29:18
• Isaiah 56:06
• Jeremiah 02:02
• John 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, ”**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:5; 1:14; 2:15; 4:12; 6:10; 6:11)
lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

Word Data:


(See back to: 1 Timothy 3:1; 6:9)
Macedonia

Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believe, Berea, faith, good news, Greece, Philippi, Thessalonica)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- 1 Timothy 01:3-4
- Acts 16:10
- Acts 20:1-3
- Philippians 04:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3109, G3110

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:3)
man of God

Facts:
The expression “man of God” is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh.

- When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as “man who belongs to God” or “man whom God has chosen” or “man who serves God.”
- When referring to an angel this could also be translated as “messenger of God” or “your angel” or “heavenly being from God who looks like a man.”

(See also: angel, honor, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- 1 Kings 12:22
- 1 Samuel 09:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H376, H430, G444, G2316

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:11)
manager, steward, stewardship

Definition:
The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:
- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: servant)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 08:03
- Luke 16:02
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 01:07

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G2012, G3621, G3623

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:4; 3:4; 3:5; 3:12; 5:14)
mediator

Definition:
A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

Translation Suggestions:
- Ways to translate “mediator” could be “go-between person” or “reconciler” or “person who brings peace.”
- Compare this term with how the term “priest” is translated. It is best if the term “mediator” is translated differently.

(See also: priest, reconcile)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 02:05
- Galatians 03:20
- Hebrews 08:06
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 12:14

Word Data:
- Strong's: H3887, G3312, G3316

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:5)
mercy, merciful

Definition:
The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and mercy to others.
- 19:17 He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- 20:12 The Persian Empire was strong but merciful to the people it conquered.
- 27:11 Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was merciful to him.”
- 32:11 But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had mercy on you.”
- 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.’”
Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:2; 1:13; 1:16)
might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:
The terms “might” and “mighty” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:16)
Definition:
The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:5)
mystery, hidden truth

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: Christ, Gentile, good news, Jew, true)

Bible References:

- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1219, H7328, G3466

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:9; 3:16)
name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

• In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
• The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
• Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
• The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

• An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
• Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
• The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
• The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
• The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
• The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

• 1 John 02:12
• 2 Timothy 02:19
• Acts 04:07
• Acts 04:12
• Acts 09:27
• Genesis 12:02
• Genesis 35:10
• Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:1)
nation

Definition:
A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonjews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:16)
obey, obedient

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal.

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:04 Noah obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- 05:06 Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- 05:10 “Because you (Abraham) have obeyed me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- 05:10 But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands.
- 13:07 If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:14)
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

Definition:
The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:10)
oversee, overseer

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:1; 3:2)
partial, partiality

**Definition:**

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

(See back to: 1 Timothy 5:21)
patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(See back to: 1 Timothy 1:16)
Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 08:03
- Acts 09:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 01:01
- Philemon 01:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 45:06 A young man named Saul agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- 46:01 Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- 46:02 While Saul was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you persecute me?”
- 46:05 So Ananias went to Saul, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- 46:09 Barnabas and Saul went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- 47:01 As Saul traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, “Paul.”
- 47:14 Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3972, G4569

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1)
Definition:
The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:06 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- 15:12 Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- 16:03 Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- 21:13 He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace, forever.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:2; 2:2; 3:3)
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment."

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 33:07 “The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or persecution, he falls away.”
- 45:06 That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- 46:02 Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you persecute me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are persecuting me!”
- 46:04 But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has persecuted the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:13; 6:11)
Pilate

Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: crucify, governor, guilt, Judea, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 39:09 Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to Pilate, the Roman governor. They hoped that Pilate would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. Pilate asked Jesus, “Are you the King of the Jews?”
- 39:10 Pilate said, “What is truth?”
- 39:11 After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no guilt in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not guilty.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not guilty!”
- 39:12 Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- 40:02 Pilate commanded that a sign be put above Jesus’ head that read, “King of the Jews.”
- 41:02 Pilate said, “Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G4091, G4194

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:13)
plea, plead, beg, implore

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
- Judges 06:31
- Luke 04:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:3)
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:3)
power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:05 The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- 32:15 Immediately Jesus realized that power had gone out from him.
- 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- 44:08 Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
pray, prayer

Definition:
The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 06:05 Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 13:12 But Moses prayed for them, and God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.
- 19:08 Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- 21:07 Priests also prayed to God for the people.
- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and prayed with each other.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:1; 2:8; 4:5; 5:5)
**preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation**

**Definition:**
To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

**Bible References:**
- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
47:14 Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

50:02 When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:16)
profane, profaned

Definition:
To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

Bible References:
- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:9)
**profit, profitable, unprofitable**

**Definition:**

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: worthy)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

**Bible References:**

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:8)
promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- 03:16 God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.
- 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s promise.
- 05:04 “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise.”
- 08:15 The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- 17:14 Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his promises.
- 50:01 Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:8)
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God's messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God's messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God's message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- 19:01 Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them prophets. The prophets heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- 19:06 All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
• **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.

• **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.

• **43:05** “This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”

• **43:07** “This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

• **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:18; Notes; 4:14)*
proud, pride, prideful

Definition:
The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very proud, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:6; 6:4; 6:17)
pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:12; 5:2; 5:22)
rebels, rebellions, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebels” means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebels” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 14:14 After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had rebelled against God were dead.
- 18:07 Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam.
- 18:09 Jeroboam rebelled against God and caused the people to sin.
- 18:13 Most of the people of Judah also rebelled against God and worshiped other gods.
- 20:07 But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon.
- 45:03 Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and rebellious people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:9)
rebuke

Definition:
The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:
- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:1; 5:20)
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 45:05 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- 49:06 He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- 49:10 When Jesus died on the cross, he received your punishment.
- 49:13 God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:3; 4:4; 5:19)
reject, rejected, rejection

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:19; 4:4; 4:7; 5:11)
reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:16; 4:15)
reward, prize, deserve,

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:18)
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

• These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
• Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
• When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

• These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
• Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
• Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

• The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
• A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
• Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

• When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
• God's “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
• When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
• The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
• Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
• The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
• Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
• The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
• The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
• If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
• Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God's laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
• The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
• The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)
Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteousness man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was righteousness because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteousness man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteousness man.
- **50:10** Then the righteousness ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:9; 6:11)
ruin, ruins, ruined

Definition:
To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to “ruin” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “spoil” or to “make useless” or to “break.”
- The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:16
- Isaiah 23:13-14

Word Data:

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:9)
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:17; 6:15)
saint

**Definition:**

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: holy)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:10)
sanctify, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God's service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God's service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, holy, set apart)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6942, G37, G38

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:5)
Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name “Satan” means “adversary” or “enemy.”
- The word “devil” means “accuser.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “devil” could also be translated as “the accuser” or “the evil one” or “the king of evil spirits” or “the chief evil spirit.”
- “Satan” could be translated as “Opponent” or “Adversary” or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:01 The snake who deceived Eve was Satan. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat Satan completely.
- 25:06 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- 33:06 So Jesus explained, “The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the devil takes the word from him.”
- 38:07 After Judas took the bread, Satan entered into him.
- 48:04 God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush Satan's head, and Satan would wound his heel. This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- 49:15 God has taken you out of Satan's kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- 50:09 "The weeds represent the people who belong to the evil one. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the devil.”
• **50:10** “When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the devil and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
• **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy Satan and his kingdom. He will throw Satan into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

**Word Data:**

• Strong’s: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:20; 3:6; 3:7; 5:15)
save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm's way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God's rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to save his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to save them.
- **44:08** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus!”
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be saved?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”
- **49:12** Good works cannot save you.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not save anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:15; 2:4; 2:15; 4:16)
Savior, savior

Facts:
The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: deliver, Jesus, save, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:10
- 2 Peter 02:20
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3467, G4990

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:1; 2:3; 4:10)
self-control, self-controlled

Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one’s behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
- 2 Peter 01:5-7
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- Galatians 05:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4623, H7307, G192, G193, G1466, G1467, G1468, G4997

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:9; 3:2)
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term “serve” generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a “servant:” a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a “servant” and a “slave” than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law.)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

393 / 446
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The slave traders sold Joseph as a slave to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** “I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”
- **29:03** “Since the servant could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as slaves to make payment on his debt.’”
- **35:06** “All my father’s servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **47:04** The slave girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.”
- **50:04** Jesus also said, “A servant is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong’s: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

(To go back to: 1 Timothy 6:1; 6:2)
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, false god, prostitute, faithful)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:10)
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:
The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8
Psalms 006:8-10
Psalms 123:03
1 Timothy 05:7-8
1 Timothy 06:13-14
Jeremiah 15:15-16
Job 16:9-10
Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:2; 3:7; 5:7; 5:14; 6:14)
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:
The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God's will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
Examples from the Bible stories:

03:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”

13:12 God was very angry with them because of their sin and planned to destroy them.

20:01 The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both sinned against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.

21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin.

35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

38:05 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”

43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”

48:08 We all deserve to die for our sins!

49:17 Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to sin. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against sin.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:9; 1:15; 5:20; 5:22; 5:24)
sister

Definition:
A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, “sister” is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase “brothers and sisters” is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, “sister” refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:
- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include “sister in Christ” or “spiritual sister” or “woman who believes in Jesus” or “fellow woman believer.”
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for “believer,” this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of “loved one” or “dear one.”

(See also: brother in Christ, spirit)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H269, H1323, G27, G79

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:2)
slander, slanders, slanderers, slanderous

Definition:
A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: blasphemy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:13
- 1 Timothy 03:11
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Mark 07:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:11)
**snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall**

**Definition:**

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To “snare” or “ensnare” is to catch with a snare, and to “trap” or “entrap” is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who is starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as “ensnared by sin” in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: free, , prey, Satan, tempt)

**Bible References:**

- Ecclesiastes 07:26
- Luke 21:34
- Mark 12:13
- Psalms 018:05

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:7; 6:9)
son

Definition:
The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a son from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn sons.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the son of Joseph?” they said.
Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:2)
**Definition:**

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a spiritual descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1 General Notes; 3:16; 4:1)
strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:12)
strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict

Definition:

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word “strife” implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 03:3-5
- Habakkuk 01:03
- Philippians 01:17
- Proverbs 17:01
- Psalms 055:8-9
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G485, G2052, G2054, G3055, G3163, G5379

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:4)
submit, submission, in submission

Definition:

To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: subject)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 03:01
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3584, G5226, G5293

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:11; 3:4)
teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:
To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God's instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:12; 3:2; 4:6; 4:11; 4:13; 5:17; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3)
teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

• In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
• People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
• In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

• The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
• Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: disciple, preach)

Bible References:

• Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
• Ephesians 04:11-13
• Galatians 06:6-8
• Habakkuk 02:18
• James 03:02
• John 01:37-39
• Luke 06:40
• Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 27:01 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
• 28:01 One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?”
• 37:02 After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But Teacher,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
• 38:14 Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, Teacher,” and kissed him.
• 49:03 Jesus was also a great teacher, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:7; 2:7)
tempt, temptation

Definition:
To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan’s temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is “tempting God” is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called “testing God.”

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “tempt” can be translated as, “try to cause to sin” or “entice” or “cause a desire to sin.”
- Ways to translate “temptations” could include, “things that tempt” or “things that entice someone to sin” or “things that cause desire to do something wrong.”
- To “tempt God” could be translated as to “put God to the test” or to “test God” or to “try God’s patience” or to “cause God to have to punish” or to “stubbornly keep disobeying God.”

(See also: disobey, Satan, sin, test)

Bible References:
- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 25:01 Then Satan came to Jesus and tempted him to sin.
- 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan’s temptations, so Satan left him.
- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:9)
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philiplians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:10)
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
unfoldingWord® Translation Words

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

• John 03:33
• Acts 04:32-33
• Acts 07:44
• Acts 13:31
• Romans 01:09
• 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
• 1 Timothy 05:19-20
• 2 Timothy 01:08
• 2 Peter 01:16-18
• 1 John 05:6-8
• 3 John 01:12
• Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 39:02 Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him.
• 39:04 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more witnesses. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
• 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of these things.”
• 43:07 “We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

• Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:6; 3:7; 5:10; 5:19; 5:21; 6:12; 6:13)
thresh

Definition:
The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:18)
time, untimely, date

Facts:
In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: doublet)

(See also: age, tribulation)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:6; 4:1; 6:15)
Timothy

Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (1 Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, believe, church, Greek, minister)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:02
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- Acts 16:03
- Colossians 01:01
- Philemon 01:01
- Philippians 01:01
- Philippians 02:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5095

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:2; 1:18; 6:20)
to minister, ministry

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(See also: 1 Timothy 1:12; 3:10; 3:13; 4:6)
transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word "trespass," but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:14)
true, truth

Definition:
The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not true! You will not die.”
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is _true_ that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the _true_ God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are the Son of God.”
- **39:10** “I have come to earth to tell the truth about God. Everyone who loves the truth listens to me.” Pilate said, “What is truth?”

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:2; 2:4; 2:7; 3:15; 4:3; 6:5)
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:
To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

• Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
• Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
• To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
• A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:
• Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
• The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
• The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:
• 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
• 1 Timothy 04:09
• Hosea 10:12-13
• Isaiah 31:1-2
• Nehemiah 13:13
• Psalm 031:05
• Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
• 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
• 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
• 34:06 Then Jesus told a story about people who trusted in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:
• Strong’s: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:11)
**turn, turn away, turn back, return**

**Definition:**

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: false god, leprosy, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

**Word Data:**

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:


(See back to: 1 Timothy 1:7)
water

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket."
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:23)
wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 3:3; 3:8; 5:23)
**word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God's word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God's message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God's words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God's word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God's true message” or “God's word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the word of God.
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what God's word says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be fulfilled.” Then he opened their minds so they could understand God's word.
- **45:10** Philip also used other scriptures to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 4:5; 5:18)
**work, works, deeds**

**Definition:**

The term "work" refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term "works" refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term "work" in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate "works" could be "deeds" or "actions" or "things that are done."
- God's "works" or "deeds" or the "work of his hands" could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "things that God does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "everything that God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in "every good work" or "every good deed."
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as "service" or "ministry."

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Visit the site at unfoldingWord® for more information)
world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:15; 3:16; 4:7; 6:7; 6:20)
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: honor)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 1:15; 4:9; 5:17; 5:18; 6:1)
wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 Timothy 2:8)
year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 5:9)
yoke, yoked, tied

Definition:
A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, oppress, persecute, servant)

Bible References:
- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 05:01
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 09:04
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 04:03

Word Data:
- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

(Go back to: 1 Timothy 6:1)
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worges
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Peny
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George “Drew” Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik “Henry” de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community